

Trace Functor and Categorized Quantum \mathfrak{sl}_n

Dissertation

zur

zur Erlangung der naturwissenschaftlichen Doktorwürde
(Dr. sc. nat.)

vorgelegt der

Mathematisch-naturwissenschaftlichen Fakultät

der

Universität Zürich

von

Zaur Guliyev

aus

Aserbaidshan

Promotionskommission

Prof. Dr. Anna Beliakova (Vorsitz)

Prof. Dr. Valentin Féray

Prof. Dr. Andrew Kresch

Zürich, 2017

Abstract

M. Khovanov and A. Lauda [35] define a 2-category \mathcal{U} such that the split Grothendieck group $K_0(\mathcal{U})$ is isomorphic to an integral version of the universal enveloping algebra $\mathbf{U}(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$, $n \geq 2$. The trace Tr is a decategorification functor that is an alternative to the usual decategorification given by K_0 . We compute the trace $\mathrm{Tr}\mathcal{U}$ using the diagrammatic presentation of \mathcal{U} . We find a graded algebra homomorphism between $\mathrm{Tr}\mathcal{U}$ and the current algebra $\mathbf{U}(\mathfrak{sl}_n[t])$, which is the universal enveloping algebra of the Lie algebra $\mathfrak{sl}_n \otimes \mathbb{C}[t]$. More recently, this homomorphism is proven to be an isomorphism in [5]. Thus, $\mathrm{Tr}\mathcal{U}$ has a richer structure than $K_0(\mathcal{U}) = \mathbf{U}(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$.

A 2-representation is a categorification of the notion of a representation. In particular, a 2-representation of \mathcal{U} is a 2-functor from \mathcal{U} to a linear, additive 2-category. Our next result provides a framework on how to get a current algebra module from any 2-representation of \mathcal{U} . We are interested in the 2-representation, defined by Khovanov-Lauda using bimodules over cohomology rings of flag varieties. This 2-representation induces an action of the current algebra $\mathbf{U}(\mathfrak{sl}_n[t])$ on the cohomology rings. We explicitly compute the action of $\mathbf{U}(\mathfrak{sl}_n[t])$ generators using the trace functor. It turns out that the obtained current algebra module is related to another family of $\mathbf{U}(\mathfrak{sl}_n[t])$ -modules, called local Weyl modules. Using known results about the cohomology rings, we are able to provide a new proof of the character formula for the local Weyl modules.

Finally, we apply the trace functor to the Bao-Shan-Wang-Webster [2] categorification \mathcal{U}^j of the coideal subalgebra of quantized \mathfrak{sl}_{2n+1} . We compute the trace of the 2-category \mathcal{U}^j in this thesis. We define a new algebra, called the current coideal algebra, and we show that $\mathrm{Tr}\mathcal{U}^j$ is homomorphic to the current coideal algebra.

Zusammenfassung

M. Khovanov and A. Lauda [35] definieren eine 2-Kategorie \mathcal{U} , so dass die geteilte Grothendieck-Gruppe $K_0(\mathcal{U})$ zu einer integralen Version der universellen einhüllenden Algebra $\mathbf{U}(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$, $n \geq 2$ isomorph ist. Die Spur Tr ist eine Alternative zu dem De-kategorisierungsfunktor, normalerweise gegeben durch K_0 . Wir berechnen $\mathrm{Tr}\mathcal{U}$ mithilfe der diagrammatischen Präsentation von \mathcal{U} . Wir finden einen graduierten Algebra-Homomorphismus zwischen $\mathrm{Tr}\mathcal{U}$ und der Stromalgebra $\mathbf{U}(\mathfrak{sl}_n[t])$, welche die universelle einhüllende Algebra der Lie-Algebra $\mathfrak{sl}_n \otimes \mathbb{C}[t]$ ist. Kürzlich wurde in [5] bewiesen, dass dieser Homomorphismus sogar einen Isomorphismus darstellt. Somit hat $\mathrm{Tr}\mathcal{U}$ eine reichere Struktur als $K_0(\mathcal{U}) = \mathbf{U}(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$.

Eine 2-Darstellung ist eine Kategorisierung des Begriffs der Darstellung. Insbesondere ist eine 2-Darstellung von \mathcal{U} ein 2-Funktor aus \mathcal{U} in eine lineare, additive 2-Kategorie. Unser nächstes Ergebnis stellt einen Rahmen dar, um aus einer beliebigen 2-Darstellung ein Stromalgebra-Modul zu erhalten. Wir interessieren uns für die 2-Darstellung, definierte von Khovanov-Lauda durch Bimoduln über Kohomologien der Fahnenmannigfaltigkeiten. Diese 2-Darstellung induziert eine Wirkung der Stromalgebra $\mathbf{U}(\mathfrak{sl}_n[t])$ auf die Kohomologieringe. Wir berechnen die explizite Stromalgebrawirkung durch den Spurfunktor. Es wird festgestellt, dass der erhaltene Stromalgebra-Modul sich auf eine andere Familie von $\mathbf{U}(\mathfrak{sl}_n[t])$ -Moduln bezieht, bekannt als lokale Weyl-Moduln. Mithilfe bekannter Ergebnisse geben wir einen neuen Beweis der Charakterformeln von lokalen Weyl-Moduln.

Schliesslich wenden wir den Spurfunktor auf die Bao-Shan-Wang-Webster Kategorisierung [2] \mathcal{U}^j der koidealen Unter algebra der quantisierten Lie-Algebra \mathfrak{sl}_{2n+1} an. Wir berechnen die Spur der 2-Kategorie \mathcal{U}^j in dieser Arbeit. Wir definieren eine neue Algebra, als koideale Stromalgebra genannt, und wir zeigen, dass $\mathrm{Tr}\mathcal{U}^j$ homomorph zu der koidealen Stromalgebra ist.

Contents

Introduction	6
I Trace of categorified quantum groups	18
1 Trace functor	18
1.1 Trace of a ring	18
1.2 Trace of a linear category	21
1.3 Idempotent completions and split Grothendieck group	22
1.4 Pivotal categories	24
1.5 2-categories and trace	25
1.6 Kar, K_0 and Tr for 2-categories	26
1.7 Horizontal trace of a 2-category	29
2 The categorified quantum \mathfrak{sl}_n	31
2.1 Cartan datum for \mathfrak{sl}_n	31
2.2 The quantum group $\mathbf{U}_q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$	32
2.3 The 2-category $\mathcal{U}_Q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$	33
2.4 The current algebra and the trace of \mathcal{U}	40
2.5 Proof of the homomorphism theorem	44
2.6 Horizontal trace of \mathcal{U}	52
II Trace and 2-representations	54
3 Local Weyl modules of current algebra	54
3.1 Local Weyl modules	54
3.2 Duals of local Weyl modules	56
4 2-representations	58
4.1 Integrable 2-representations	58
4.2 Cyclotomic KLR algebras	59
4.3 Web algebra and foamation 2-representation	63
5 The 2-category \mathbf{Pol}_N	67
5.1 Symmetric polynomials	67
5.2 The 2-functor $\mathcal{U} \rightarrow \mathbf{Pol}_N$	71

5.3	$Z(\mathbf{Pol}_N)$ as a current algebra module	76
5.4	The coinvariant algebra C_ν^λ	79
III Trace of categorified quantum symmetric pairs		88
6	Categorification of the coideal algebra	88
6.1	The coideal algebra \mathbf{U}^j	88
6.2	Coideal 2-category \mathcal{U}^j	90
7	Trace of \mathcal{U}^j	95
7.1	Current coideal algebra	95
7.2	Proof of the homomorphism theorem	99

Introduction

The special linear Lie algebra \mathfrak{sl}_n , $n \geq 2$ is the Lie algebra of $n \times n$ complex matrices with zero trace. The quantum group $\mathbf{U}_q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$ is a q -deformation of the universal enveloping algebra $\mathbf{U}(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$. A reason why quantum groups are interesting is that they can be used to obtain invariants of links in \mathbb{R}^3 . For example, the Jones polynomial is a classical link invariant defined using the vector representation of $\mathbf{U}_q(\mathfrak{sl}_2)$.

L. Crane and I. Frenkel [27] conjectured that quantum groups might be shadows of higher categorical structures – the *categorified quantum groups*. This conjecture was supported by Lusztig’s [42] discovery of canonical bases, which have certain integrality and positivity properties. M. Khovanov and A. Lauda [35] categorified $\mathbf{U}_q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$. Namely, they defined a diagrammatic 2-category \mathcal{U} and showed that *split Grothendieck group* decategorification of \mathcal{U} is isomorphic to an integral version of $\mathbf{U}_q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$. Categorified quantum groups are used to obtain categorified link invariants, which are usually more subtle than the classical ones, and their additional structure gives more information about the link.

Trace is an alternative decategorification functor to the split Grothendieck group. In this thesis we apply the *trace functor* on the 2-category \mathcal{U} and its representations. We show that the trace of \mathcal{U} is algebraically homomorphic to the *current algebra* $\mathbf{U}(\mathfrak{sl}_n \otimes \mathbb{C}[t])$. There is a 2-category \mathbf{Pol}_N that admits an action of \mathcal{U} . The 2-category \mathbf{Pol}_N is constructed by Khovanov-Lauda [35] using bimodules over cohomology rings of flag varieties to prove the non-degeneracy of \mathcal{U} . We present this 2-category in terms of symmetric polynomials. We define a current algebra module using the objects of \mathbf{Pol}_N and explicitly compute the current algebra action. We are able to relate this module to well-studied current algebra modules, called local Weyl modules, and we give a new proof of character formula for the local Weyl modules. We go over each of these steps in this introductory chapter.

Categorification and K_0 decategorification

Categorification is a process of finding category-theoretic analogs of set-like mathematical structures by replacing sets with categories, functions with functors and equations between functions by natural isomorphisms between functors. *Decategorification* is the inverse process which ‘forgets’ the morphisms in the category and identifies the isomorphic objects.

For example, let $\mathbf{Vect}_{\mathbb{k}}$ be the category of finite-dimensional vector spaces over a field \mathbb{k} . Since finite-dimensional vector spaces are isomorphic if and only if their dimensions are equal, the set of isomorphism classes of objects in $\mathbf{Vect}_{\mathbb{k}}$ are in bijection with the natural numbers \mathbb{N} . Hence, we can view $\mathbf{Vect}_{\mathbb{k}}$ as a categorification of \mathbb{N} .

One of the most prominent instances of categorification is the *Khovanov homology*. To any link Khovanov assigns a chain complex of graded vector spaces. He then proves that homology of this chain complex is a link invariant. The Euler characteristic of the Khovanov homology gives the Jones polynomial. Hence, Khovanov homology categorifies the Jones polynomial [3]. Khovanov homology is proven to be a strictly stronger link invariant than the Jones polynomial.

Decategorification is usually understood as a functor that returns the split Grothendieck group $K_0(\mathcal{C})$ of an additive category \mathcal{C} . The split Grothendieck group $K_0(\mathcal{C})$ is the abelian group generated by isomorphism classes $\{[x]_{\cong}\}_{x \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C})}$, modulo the relation

$$[x \oplus y]_{\cong} = [x]_{\cong} + [y]_{\cong}.$$

In our example of $\mathbf{Vect}_{\mathbb{k}}$, by choosing a basis, every vector space $V \in \text{Ob}(\mathbf{Vect}_{\mathbb{k}})$ is isomorphic to a direct sum of copies of the ground field: $[V]_{\cong} = [\mathbb{k}^{\oplus \dim(V)}]_{\cong} = \dim(V)[\mathbb{k}]_{\cong}$. Hence, the Grothendieck group $K_0(\mathbf{Vect}_{\mathbb{k}})$ can be identified with \mathbb{N} by sending $[\mathbb{k}]_{\cong} \mapsto 1$.

A 2-category is a category with an additional structure – the hom-sets are also categories. That is, we have 2-morphisms between 1-morphisms. A 2-category can be thought of as a categorification of the usual notion of a category. For example, \mathbf{Cat} is the 2-category whose objects are small categories, morphisms are functors, and 2-morphisms are natural transformations between functors. The split Grothendieck group of a 2-category can be thought of as a procedure for turning the 2-categorical structure of an additive category into a 1-categorical structure of an abelian group. We get a 1-category if we forget 2-morphisms in a 2-category and identify all isomorphic 1-morphisms.

Trace decategorification

The trace of a square matrix is the sum of its diagonal elements. The notion of a trace can be generalized to a \mathbb{k} -algebra A . We define the trace $\text{Tr } A$ to be $A/[A, A]$, which is also known as the zeroth Hochschild homology of A .

We say that a category is \mathbb{k} -linear if the set of morphisms form a \mathbb{k} -linear vector space, and compositions are bilinear over \mathbb{k} . The trace of a \mathbb{k} -linear category \mathcal{C} is defined by

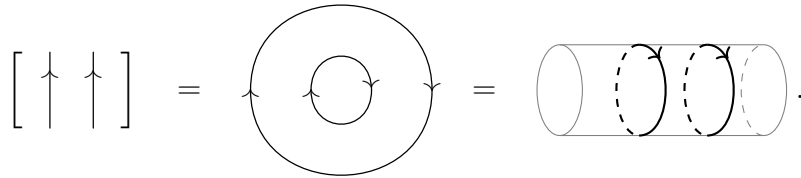
$$\text{Tr } \mathcal{C} = \left(\bigoplus_{x \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C})} \text{End}_{\mathcal{C}}(x) \right) / \text{Span}_{\mathbb{k}}\{f \circ g - g \circ f\},$$

where f and g run through all pairs of morphisms $f: x \rightarrow y$ and $g: y \rightarrow x$ with $x, y \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C})$. This is a generalization of the trace of an algebra, since a \mathbb{k} -algebra is a \mathbb{k} -linear category with one object. The trace of a \mathbb{k} -linear category \mathcal{C} is the same as its *zeroth Hochschild-Mitchell homology*. The trace is another procedure to turn \mathcal{C} into an abelian group. For example, in the category $\mathbf{Vect}_{\mathbb{k}}$, the trace class $[\varphi]$ of a \mathbb{k} -linear endomorphism $\varphi: V \rightarrow V$ is equal to the class $\text{tr}(\varphi)[1_{\mathbb{k}}]$, where $\text{tr}(\varphi)$ is the usual trace of the \mathbb{k} -linear endomorphism φ . Since $\dim V = \text{tr}(1_V)$, the trace can be seen as a generalization of the dimension decategorification map. There is an abelian group homomorphism

$$h_{\mathcal{C}}: K_0(\mathcal{C}) \rightarrow \text{Tr } \mathcal{C}, \quad h_{\mathcal{C}}[x]_{\cong} = [1_x].$$

The map $h_{\mathcal{C}}$ is called *Chern character map*, and it is generally neither injective nor surjective. That is to say, K_0 and Tr functors may produce different results. As we will see in this thesis, Tr is often richer than K_0 .

The trace $\text{Tr } \mathcal{C}$ of a 2-category \mathcal{C} is a category who has the same object set as \mathcal{C} , and morphisms of $\text{Tr } \mathcal{C}$ are the trace classes of 2-endomorphisms of \mathcal{C} . If 2-morphisms of \mathcal{C} admit a diagrammatic presentation, then the trace class of a 2-endomorphism can be described either by closing the loose ends of a diagram to right on a plane or by closing them vertically around an horizontal cylinder, e.g.



There is another notion of a trace $\text{Tr}^h \mathcal{C}$ of a 2-category \mathcal{C} , called the *horizontal trace*, introduced in [7]. The horizontal trace is more complicated to define and to work with in full generality. Diagrammatically, images of 2-morphisms under $\text{Tr}^h \mathcal{C}$ can be described by revolving diagrams horizontally around a vertical cylinder, e.g.



There is an injective map $\text{Tr } \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \text{Tr}^h \mathcal{C}$ that can be diagrammatically described by turning the cylinder 90 degrees to the right. This suggests that $\text{Tr}^h \mathcal{C}$ is richer than $\text{Tr } \mathcal{C}$.

H. Queffelec and D. Rose [50] use horizontal trace functor to construct an \mathfrak{sl}_n homology for colored links in a thickened annulus. We will describe their construction in section 2.2.3 of this thesis.

Another application of the horizontal trace is given by A. Beliakova, K. Putyra and S. Wehrli [9]. Let **Tan** be the 2-category whose objects are points in a thickened stripe $\mathbb{R} \times I$, 1-morphisms are oriented tangles in $\mathbb{R} \times I \times I$, and 2-morphisms are tangle cobordisms in $\mathbb{R} \times I \times I \times I$. Beliakova-Putyra-Wehrli prove that the horizontal trace of **Tan** is equivalent to the category of oriented links in $S^1 \times \mathbb{R}^2$ and cobordisms between them. They actually prove this equivalence in a more general setting, where tangles in any thickened surface are considered, and the notion of the horizontal trace is quantized. Beliakova-Putyra-Wehrli use it to introduce the *quantum annular link homology* for annular links.

Trace of categorified quantum \mathfrak{sl}_n .

Another milestone in categorification was achieved independently by M. Khovanov and A. Lauda [35] and by R. Rouquier [53]. They define a 2-category $\mathcal{U}_Q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$ whose split Grothendieck group gives the integral version of the idempotent completion $\dot{\mathcal{U}}_q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$ of the associated quantum group $\mathbf{U}_q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$. In this thesis we will mainly work with the diagrammatic 2-category defined by Khovanov-Lauda [35]. They categorify Beilinson-Lusztig-MacPherson [4] idempotent version $\dot{\mathbf{U}}_q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$, in which the unit in $\mathbf{U}_q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$ is replaced by a collection of idempotents $\{1_{\bar{\nu}}\}$, indexed by elements $\bar{\nu}$ of the integral \mathfrak{sl}_n weight lattice X . The $\mathbb{Q}(q)$ -module $\dot{\mathbf{U}}_q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$ has a natural category structure with the object set X , and hom-sets from $\bar{\nu} \in X$ to $\bar{\mu} \in X$ are given by $1_{\bar{\mu}} \dot{\mathbf{U}}_q(\mathfrak{sl}_n) 1_{\bar{\nu}}$. The algebra $\dot{\mathbf{U}}_q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$ is generated over $\mathbb{Q}(q)$ by elements $1_{\bar{\nu}}$, $1_{\bar{\nu}+\alpha_i} E_i 1_{\bar{\nu}}$ and $1_{\bar{\nu}-\alpha_i} F_i 1_{\bar{\nu}}$, modulo certain relations, where $\bar{\nu} \in X$, $i \in I = \{1, \dots, n-1\}$ and α_i is the i -th simple root.

Khovanov and Lauda define $\mathcal{U}_Q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$ to be the 2-category with the object set X and 1-morphisms generated by the identity 1-morphism $\mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}}$ and the morphisms $\mathcal{E}_i \mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}}: \bar{\nu} \rightarrow \bar{\nu} + \alpha_i$, $\mathcal{F}_i \mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}}: \bar{\nu} \rightarrow \bar{\nu} - \alpha_i$ for all $i \in I$. For each 1-morphism f there is also a degree shifted 1-morphism $f\langle t \rangle$ in $\mathcal{U}_Q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$ for each $t \in \mathbb{Z}$. The 2-morphisms are \mathbb{k} -vector spaces spanned by certain oriented planar diagrams, modulo isotopies and local relations. For example,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & \mathcal{E}_j & \mathcal{E}_i\langle 1 \rangle \\ & \nearrow & \nearrow \\ \bar{\nu} + \alpha_i + \alpha_j & & \bar{\nu} \\ & \searrow & \searrow \\ & \mathcal{E}_i & \mathcal{E}_j \end{array}$$

is a 2-morphism $\mathcal{E}_i \mathcal{E}_j \mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}_j \mathcal{E}_i \mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}}\langle 1 \rangle$. Precise set of generators and relations of 2-morphisms in $\mathcal{U}_Q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$ is given in section 1.2.3 of this thesis. Let $\dot{\mathcal{U}}_Q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$ be the smallest 2-category which contains $\mathcal{U}_Q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$ and has splitting idempotents. The split Grothendieck group $K_0(\dot{\mathcal{U}}_Q(\mathfrak{sl}_n))$ can be regarded as a $\mathbb{Z}[q, q^{-1}]$ -module if we forget the 2-morphisms, iden-

tify isomorphic 1-morphisms and let the degree shift $\langle 1 \rangle$ of a 1-morphism correspond to a multiplication by q . Khovanov and Lauda prove that there is a $\mathbb{Z}[q, q^{-1}]$ -module isomorphism between an integral form of $\dot{\mathbf{U}}_q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$ and the split Grothendieck group $K_0(\dot{\mathcal{U}}_Q(\mathfrak{sl}_n))$ which maps $q^t E_i 1_{\bar{\nu}}$ to $[\mathcal{E}_i \mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}}(t)]_{\cong}$, $q^t F_i 1_{\bar{\nu}}$ to $[\mathcal{F}_i \mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}}(t)]_{\cong}$ for all $i \in I$ and $q^t 1_{\bar{\nu}}$ to $[\mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}}(t)]_{\cong}$.

Let \mathcal{U} be the modification of $\mathcal{U}_Q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$, where degree shifts of each 1-morphism are identified, and 2-morphisms are not required to preserve the degree. The split Grothendieck group $K_0(\mathcal{U})$ is a \mathbb{Z} -module rather than a $\mathbb{Z}[q, q^{-1}]$ -module since identifying morphisms that differ by a degree shifts will correspond to setting $q = 1$ on the K_0 level. The trace $\text{Tr} \mathcal{U}$ turns out to be a larger algebra with a \mathbb{Z} -grading. Let $\mathfrak{sl}_n[t] = \mathfrak{sl}_n \otimes \mathbb{k}[t]$ be the extension of \mathfrak{sl}_n by the polynomials in parameter t . The Lie bracket $[a \otimes t^r, b \otimes t^s] = [a, b] \otimes t^{r+s}$ defines a graded Lie algebra structure on $\mathfrak{sl}_n \otimes \mathbb{k}[t]$ with $\deg(a \otimes t^r) = 2r$. We call the universal enveloping algebra $\mathbf{U}(\mathfrak{sl}_n[t])$ the *current algebra*. Current algebra is generated over \mathbb{k} by $E_{i,r} = E_i \otimes t^r, F_{i,r} = F_i \otimes t^r, H_{i,r} = H_i \otimes t^r$ for all $r \geq 0$ and $i \in I$, where E_i, F_i, H_i are the Chevalley basis of \mathfrak{sl}_n . We denote by $\dot{\mathbf{U}}(\mathfrak{sl}_n[t])$ the idempotent version of the current algebra. The first result of this thesis is the following theorem.

Theorem 1. *There is a well-defined graded algebra homomorphism $\rho: \dot{\mathbf{U}}(\mathfrak{sl}_n[t]) \rightarrow \text{Tr} \mathcal{U}$.*

The definition of the map ρ is given in section 1.2.4 of this thesis. We prove Theorem 1 by using explicit generators of $\text{Tr} \mathcal{U}$ as suggested in [7] and checking the current algebra relations. Our computation utilizes diagrammatic presentation of generators and relations of 2-morphisms in \mathcal{U} . We describe the trace classes of 2-endomorphisms by closing the loose ends of the diagrams to the right. The case $n = 2$ is first proven by Beliakova-Habiro-Lauda-Zivkovic [7]. They obtain a stronger statement which says that ρ is an isomorphism. Their proof is based on decompositions of arbitrary 1-morphisms into indecomposables, which is not possible for general n . The homomorphism ρ has been proven by Beliakova-Habiro-Lauda-Webster [5] to be an isomorphism for any $n \geq 2$. They use properties of local Weyl modules of current algebra to prove their result.

2-representations

Representations of $\mathbf{U}_q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$ are used to obtain invariants of links and 3-manifolds. A motivation for categorifying the representations is to achieve even stronger invariants. A *2-representation* or *categorical representation* of $\mathbf{U}_q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$ is a graded, additive 2-functor $\mathcal{U}_Q(\mathfrak{sl}_n) \rightarrow \mathcal{K}$ for some graded, additive 2-category \mathcal{K} . Categorical representations of $\mathbf{U}_q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$ have been studied even before the categorification of the quantum group $\mathbf{U}_q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$ itself. A categorification of the tensor products of the fundamental \mathfrak{sl}_2 representations was first algebraically formulated by Bernstein-Frenkel-Khovanov [10], later extended to the quantum group $\mathbf{U}_q(\mathfrak{sl}_2)$ by Frenkel-Khovanov-Stroppel [28], Stroppel [57], Chuang-Rouquier [26], and to $\mathbf{U}_q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$ by Mazorchuk-Stroppel [48], Webster [61]. A big role here

has always played the graded, parabolic BGG category \mathcal{O} of certain finitely generated \mathfrak{gl}_m weight modules.

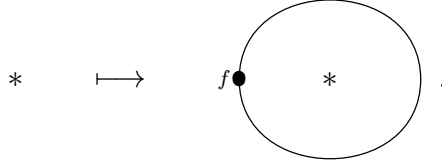
A modification of \mathcal{K} by allowing 2-morphisms of any degree lets us to define a 2-representation $\mathcal{U} \rightarrow \mathcal{K}$. We define the center $Z(x)$ of an object $x \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{K})$ to be the endomorphism ring $\text{End}(1_x)$ and *the center of objects* $Z(\mathcal{K})$ to be $Z(\mathcal{K}) = \bigoplus_{x \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{K})} Z(x)$. We are able to prove the following statement by using Theorem 1 and a certain cyclicity property of \mathcal{U} .

Theorem 2. *Any 2-representation $\mathcal{U} \rightarrow \mathcal{K}$ induces an action of $\mathbf{U}(\mathfrak{sl}_n[t])$ on $\text{Tr } \mathcal{K}$ and on $Z(\mathcal{K})$.*

The action on $\text{Tr } \mathcal{K}$ is defined by applying the trace functor on $\mathcal{U} \rightarrow \mathcal{K}$ and composing with the homomorphism ρ in Theorem 1:

$$\dot{\mathbf{U}}(\mathfrak{sl}_n[t]) \rightarrow \text{Tr } \mathcal{U} \rightarrow \text{Tr } \mathcal{K}.$$

The precise action on $Z(\mathcal{K})$ will be given in section 1.2.4 of this thesis. Intuitively, it can be understood as follows. In terms of diagrams, an element in $Z(\mathcal{K})$ is a closed diagram $*$. The action of $f \in \mathbf{U}(\mathfrak{sl}_n[t])$ corresponds to the closure of diagram f around $*$, and this gives us another closed diagram:



Local Weyl modules and the trace of cyclotomic KLR algebras

Here we describe the 2-representation of \mathcal{U} over cyclotomic KLR algebras, and we give a brief overview how the trace and the center of cyclotomic KLR algebras are related to local Weyl modules.

A *local Weyl module* $W(\bar{\lambda})$ of the current algebra $\mathbf{U}(\mathfrak{sl}_n[t])$ assigned to a dominant weight $\bar{\lambda} \in X$ is defined to be the graded module generated by $v_{\bar{\lambda}}$ over $\mathbf{U}(\mathfrak{sl}_n[t])$, subject to the following relations for all $i \in I$ and $j \geq 0$:

$$E_{i,j}v_{\bar{\lambda}} = F_{i,0}^{\bar{\lambda}_i+1}v_{\bar{\lambda}} = 0, \quad H_{i,j}v_{\bar{\lambda}} = \delta_{0,j}\bar{\lambda}_i v_{\bar{\lambda}},$$

where δ is the Kronecker symbol. $W(\bar{\lambda})$ is finite-dimensional, inherits degree from the current algebra, and each homogeneous piece $W(\bar{\lambda})\{2r\}$ is an \mathfrak{sl}_n -module.

Local Weyl modules play an important role in the study of finite-dimensional representations of affine Lie algebras. Chari-Pressley [25] were first to introduce them, where they prove certain universality properties. Since then local Weyl modules and their infinite-dimensional analogues, called *global Weyl modules*, have attracted a vast amount of interest. Chari-Loktev [24] show that local Weyl modules are isomorphic to another families of current algebra modules, called Demazure modules and fusion modules. Fusion modules are certain graded tensor products of fundamental \mathfrak{sl}_n representations, and by setting $t = 1$ we recover the usual tensor products. Kodera-Naoi [37] prove that radical and socle series of local Weyl modules coincide with their grading filtration. They also relate local Weyl modules to the homology groups of Nakajima's quiver varieties of type A .

The *Khovanov-Lauda-Rouquier (KLR) algebra* R , a generalization of nilHecke algebra, was introduced independently by Khovanov-Lauda [33] and by Rouquier [53] to categorify $\mathbf{U}_q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$. R is a graded algebra and admits a rich diagrammatic presentation.

For each dominant weight $\bar{\lambda} \in X$, R has a graded, finite-dimensional quotient $R^{\bar{\lambda}}$ which is called the *cyclotomic KLR algebra*. Brundan-Kleshchev [15] prove the isomorphism between $R^{\bar{\lambda}}$ and cyclotomic Hecke algebras. Khovanov-Lauda [33] show that the category $R^{\bar{\lambda}}\text{-pMod}$ of graded, finitely generated, projective $R^{\bar{\lambda}}$ -modules is a 2-representation of $\mathcal{U}_Q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$, and they conjecture that $R^{\bar{\lambda}}\text{-pMod}$ categorifies the finite-dimensional, simple $\mathbf{U}_q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$ -module with the highest weight $\bar{\lambda}$. This conjecture was proven independently by Kang-Kashiwara [32] and Webster [61]. Webster defines a flat deformation $\check{R}^{\bar{\lambda}}$ of the algebra $R^{\bar{\lambda}}$ and shows that the category $\check{R}^{\bar{\lambda}}\text{-pMod}$ is Rouquier's [54] *universal categorification* $\mathcal{V}(\bar{\lambda})$.

It is well-known that for a graded algebra A , we have $\text{Tr } A = \text{Tr}(A\text{-pMod})$ (see Shan-Varagnolo-Vasserot [56], Proposition 2.1). Hence, by applying the trace to the 2-category $R^{\bar{\lambda}}\text{-pMod}$ and using Theorem 2, we obtain a current algebra module structure on the trace $\text{Tr } R^{\bar{\lambda}}$ of the cyclotomic KLR algebra $R^{\bar{\lambda}}$.

Let $Z(R^{\bar{\lambda}})$ be the center of $R^{\bar{\lambda}}$. $\text{Tr } R^{\bar{\lambda}}$ and $Z(R^{\bar{\lambda}})$ can be understood as a zeroth Hochschild homology and cohomology respectively. There is a *symmetrizing form* $R^{\bar{\lambda}} \rightarrow \mathbb{k}$ (also known as a *Frobenius trace*, see Webster [61], Theorem 3.18), and this form induces a duality between $\text{Tr } R^{\bar{\lambda}}$ and $Z(R^{\bar{\lambda}})$ by Shan-Varagnolo-Vasserot [56] (Propositions 2.7 and 3.10). Using this duality, one can translate the current algebra action on $\text{Tr } R^{\bar{\lambda}}$ to an action on $Z(R^{\bar{\lambda}})$.

It turns out that $W(\bar{\lambda})$ and $\text{Tr } R^{\bar{\lambda}}$ are isomorphic as graded current algebra modules. This result is proven independently by Beliakova-Habiro-Lauda-Webster [5] and by Shan-Varagnolo-Vasserot [56]. They also prove that this isomorphism induces an isomorphism between $Z(R^{\bar{\lambda}})$ and an appropriate dualization of the local Weyl module $W(\bar{\lambda})$.

The 2-representation in equivariant cohomology of flag varieties

Here we apply Theorem 2 to a 2-representation defined by Khovanov-Lauda [35] to obtain a current algebra module. We first present their 2-representation in terms of symmetric polynomials and then compute the current algebra action on the center of objects.

A n -composition of N is an ordered n -tuple of non-negative integers which sum up to a fixed integer N . Let $\nu = (\nu_1, \nu_2, \dots, \nu_n)$ be a n -composition of N and P_ν be the subalgebra of the polynomial ring in variables X_1, X_2, \dots, X_N , which is symmetric in the first ν_1 -tuple of variables, in the second ν_2 -tuple of variables and so forth. This ring is generated by complete symmetric polynomials $h_r(\nu; i)$ in i -th tuple of ν_i variables over all $r \geq 0$, $1 \leq i \leq n$, as well as by elementary symmetric polynomials $e_r(\nu; i)$ or by power sum symmetric polynomials $p_r(\nu; i)$.

We will construct a 2-category \mathbf{Pol}_N together with a 2-representation $\Theta_N: \mathcal{U} \rightarrow \mathbf{Pol}_N$. Objects in \mathbf{Pol}_N are the graded rings P_ν for each n -composition of N , 1-morphisms are bimodules over P_ν , and 2-morphisms are bimodule maps. \mathbf{Pol}_N is equivalent to the 2-category \mathbf{EqFlag}_N , which is defined by Khovanov-Lauda to show the non-degeneracy of \mathcal{U} . \mathbf{EqFlag}_N is constructed using bimodules over equivariant cohomology rings of partial flag varieties, and mapping Chern classes in \mathbf{EqFlag}_N to elementary symmetric polynomials in \mathbf{Pol}_N defines an equivalence of 2-categories.

The split Grothendieck group of \mathbf{Pol}_N gives the finite-dimensional, simple highest weight \mathfrak{sl}_n module $V(\bar{\lambda}_0)$ of the highest weight $\bar{\lambda}_0 = N\omega_1$ for the first fundamental weight ω_1 . This proven by Frenkel-Khovanov-Stroppel [28] for the case $n = 2$ and by Khovanov-Lauda [35] for general n .

The 2-functor Θ_N factors through Rouquier's universal categorification $\mathcal{V}(\bar{\lambda}_0)$:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{U} & \xrightarrow{\Theta_N} & \mathbf{Pol}_N \\ & \searrow & \uparrow \Theta'_N \\ & & \mathcal{V}(\bar{\lambda}_0) \end{array}$$

where Θ'_N is a strongly equivariant 2-functor in the sense of Webster [61].

The 2-representation Θ_N induces a current algebra action on the center of objects $Z(\mathbf{Pol}_N) = \bigoplus_\nu P_\nu$ by Theorem 2. We identify the current algebra module structure in $\bigoplus_\nu P_\nu$ explicitly in our next result.

Theorem 3. *Let ν be an n -composition of N , $i \in I$, $\alpha_i = (0, \dots, 0, 1, -1, 0, \dots, 0)$, $k_i = \sum_{l=1}^i \nu_l$ and $m, j \geq 0$. The action of the current algebra $\mathbf{U}(\mathfrak{sl}_n[t])$ on $\bigoplus_\nu P_\nu$ is defined as follows.*

1. The map $F_{i,j}: P_\nu \rightarrow P_{\nu-\alpha_i}$ is the $P_{\nu-\alpha_i}$ -module homomorphism such that

$$F_{i,j}(X_{k_i}^m) = \sum_{l=0}^{\nu_i-1} (-1)^l e_l(\nu - \alpha_i; i) h_{m+j+\nu_i-\nu_{i+1}-1-l}(\nu - \alpha_i; i+1).$$

2. The map $E_{i,j}: P_\nu \rightarrow P_{\nu+\alpha_i}$ is the $P_{\nu+\alpha_i}$ -module homomorphism such that

$$E_{i,j}(X_{k_{i+1}}^m) = \sum_{l=0}^{\nu_{i+1}-1} (-1)^l e_l(\nu + \alpha_i; i+1) h_{m+j+\nu_{i+1}-\nu_i-1-l}(\nu + \alpha_i; i).$$

3. The map $H_{i,j}: P_\nu \rightarrow P_\nu$ is the multiplication by $(-1)^j(p_j(\nu; i+1) - p_j(\nu; i))$ if $j > 0$, and by $\nu_i - \nu_{i+1}$ if $j = 0$.

The proof of Theorem 3 follows from a direct computation using diagrammatic description of 2-morphisms in \mathcal{U} and some relations in the polynomial algebra. The action of $E_{i,j}$ and $F_{i,j}$ for $j = 0$ are already given by Brundan [13] using Schur-Weyl duality, Theorem 3 generalizes it for a current algebra parameter j in the context of 2-representation theory.

Current algebra action on the cohomology of flag varieties

Brundan [13] defines a finite-dimensional quotient C_ν^λ of the algebra P_ν for a given n -composition ν and n -partition λ of N . We will show that the current algebra action defined in Theorem 3 descends to the quotient ring $\bigoplus_\nu C_\nu^\lambda$, following a similar proof for \mathfrak{sl}_n action given by Brundan [13].

The rings C_ν^λ appear naturally in geometry and 2-representation theory. Brundan and Ostrik [17] prove that C_ν^λ is isomorphic to the cohomology ring of a Spaltenstein variety – a quiver variety of type A . Mackaay [45] shows that $\bigoplus_\nu C_\nu^\lambda$ is isomorphic to the center of the \mathfrak{sl}_m web algebra and to the center of the foam category. Brundan [13] proves an algebra isomorphism between $\bigoplus_\nu C_\nu^\lambda$ and the center of parabolic category \mathcal{O}^λ . Varagnolo-Vasserot-Shan [56] and Webster [60] prove a graded algebra isomorphism between the center of the cyclotomic KLR algebra R^λ and $\bigoplus_\nu C_\nu^\lambda$.

The graded character and dimension formulas for $\bigoplus_\nu C_\nu^\lambda$ are given by Brundan [13]. This result allows us to compute graded characters and dimensions of the local Weyl modules in terms of the *Kostka-Foulkes polynomials* (see [43]). The Kostka-Foulkes polynomials $K_{\lambda,\nu}(t)$, indexed by a partition λ and a composition ν play major role in the representation theory of affine Lie algebras and symmetric groups.

Theorem 4. *Let λ be a n -partition of a positive integer N . Let $\bar{\lambda} = \sum_{i=1}^{n-1} (\lambda_i - \lambda_{i+1})\omega_i$, where $\omega_i, i \in I$ are fundamental \mathfrak{sl}_n weights. The graded character of the local Weyl module*

$W(\bar{\lambda})$ is given by the formula

$$ch_t W(\bar{\lambda}) = \sum_{\tau} K_{\tau^T, \lambda^T}(t) ch V(\bar{\tau}),$$

and the graded dimension of the weight space $\bar{\nu}$ is given by

$$\sum_{r \geq 0} \dim_{\mathbb{C}} W_{\bar{\nu}}(\bar{\lambda}) \{2r\} t^r = \sum_{\tau} K_{\tau, \nu}(1) K_{\tau^T, \lambda^T}(t),$$

where the summations on the right hand sides are over all n -compositions of N , $V(\bar{\tau})$ is the finite-dimensional, simple \mathfrak{sl}_n module with the highest weight $\bar{\tau} = \sum_{i=1}^{n-1} (\tau_i - \tau_{i+1}) \omega_i$, and $W_{\bar{\nu}}(\bar{\lambda})$ is the weight space $W_{\bar{\nu}}(\bar{\lambda}) = \{w \in W(\bar{\lambda}) \mid H_{i,0} w = (\nu_i - \nu_{i+1}) w\}$.

The proof of Theorem 4 follows easily from the work of Shan-Varagnolo-Vasserot [56] (also see Webster [60]). They show that $\bigoplus_{\nu} C_{\nu}^{\lambda}$ is isomorphic to the dual Weyl module $W^*(\bar{\lambda})$. We only need to adjust the degree, and this will give a character formula. This formula can be understood as a *character decategorification* of $W(\bar{\lambda})$. The graded dimension is obtained from the character formula.

Theorem 4 is probably already known to experts. We, however, give a new proof with a different approach and a simpler formula. Sanderson [55] computes characters of Demazure modules, and this can be combined with results of Chari-Loktev [24] to derive the characters for local Weyl modules. Chari-Ion ([23], Theorem 4.1) also give a character formula, however they use an entirely different approach, combinatorics and proof of which is beyond our understanding.

Trace of categorified quantum symmetric pairs

Bao-Wang [1] use the *coideal algebra* \mathbf{U}^j to develop a new Kazhdan-Lusztig theory for the category \mathcal{O} . The $\mathbb{Q}(q)$ -algebra \mathbf{U}^j is isomorphic to a subalgebra of the quantum group $\mathbf{U}_q(\mathfrak{sl}_{2n+1})$, $n \geq 1$. The pair $(\mathbf{U}_q(\mathfrak{sl}_{2n+1}), \mathbf{U}^j)$ forms a quantum symmetric pair in the sense of Letzter [41].

Let $\dot{\mathbf{U}}^j$ be the idempotent completion of the coideal algebra \mathbf{U}^j . The algebra $\dot{\mathbf{U}}^j$ can be viewed as a category with objects indexed by a quotient weight lattice X_j of \mathfrak{sl}_{2n+1} weight lattice, and morphisms generated by 1_{μ} , $1_{\mu+\alpha_i} E_i 1_{\mu}$, $1_{\mu-\alpha_i} F_i 1_{\mu}$ for $i \in \mathbb{I}^j = \{\diamond, \diamond + 1, \dots, r - \diamond\}$, $\diamond = \frac{1}{2}$, $\mu \in X_j$. For all $i \neq \diamond$, the generators E_i , F_i satisfy the same relations as standard generators of the usual idempotent quantum group and special relations for $i = \diamond$.

Bao-Shan-Wang-Webster [2] construct a graded, additive 2-category \mathfrak{U}^j which categorifies $\dot{\mathbf{U}}^j$. Namely, the split Grothendieck group of the Karoubi envelope of \mathfrak{U}^j is isomorphic

to the integral form of $\dot{\mathbf{U}}^j$. The 2-morphisms in \mathfrak{U}^j are also generated by planar diagrams as in \mathcal{U} , but there is a special set of relations between \diamond -labeled strands.

We define a new \mathbb{k} -algebra \mathbf{U}_t^j , called *current coideal algebra*, in terms of generators and relations similar to those of current algebra. In fact, \mathbf{U}_t^j is isomorphic to a certain subalgebra of $\mathbf{U}(\mathfrak{sl}_{2n+1}[t])$. Let $\mathrm{Tr}\mathcal{U}^j$ be the trace of the graded version \mathcal{U}^j of the 2-category \mathfrak{U}^j . We have the following result.

Theorem 5. *There is a graded algebra homomorphism between \mathbf{U}_t^j and $\mathrm{Tr}\mathcal{U}^j$.*

We prove Theorem 5 by checking the relations in current coideal algebra for the generators of $\mathrm{Tr}\mathcal{U}^j$. We only need to check the relation between \diamond -labeled generators, and the rest of the proof follows from Theorem 1.

We are also able to obtain the trace decategorification of Bao-Shan-Wang-Webster 2-category \mathfrak{U}^j . The proof uses a similar argument as the trace decategorification of $\mathcal{U}_Q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$ by Beliakova-Habiro-Lauda-Webster [5], Theorem 8.1.

Theorem 6. *There is an algebra isomorphism between $\dot{\mathbf{U}}^j \cong \mathrm{Tr}\mathfrak{U}^j$.*

Organization of thesis

The thesis is organized as follows. In the first chapter we construct a homomorphism between the current algebras and the trace of categorified quantum groups. We start by giving the relevant definitions concerning traces and 2-categories. We define the Khovanov-Lauda 2-category using the diagrammatic presentation. We then construct a homomorphism between the current algebras and the trace of categorified quantum groups. This part is based on a joint work [8] with A. Beliakova, K. Habiro and A. Lauda.

In second chapter, we concern ourselves with 2-representations of categorified quantum \mathfrak{sl}_n and current algebra modules. The most part of this chapter is devoted to the polynomial construction of the 2-category \mathbf{Pol}_N . We then explicitly describe the current algebra action on the center of objects of \mathbf{Pol}_N and use it to derive the character formula of local Weyl modules.

The third chapter is the computation of the trace of categorified coideal algebra \mathcal{U}^j . We prove that $\mathrm{Tr}\mathcal{U}^j$ homomorphic to an extension of the coideal algebra. This chapter mainly consists of diagrammatic computations in \mathcal{U}^j .

Acknowledgments

I would like to thank, first and foremost, my advisor Prof. Dr. Anna Beliakova for her guidance and support during every stage of my graduate studies. I sincerely appreciate the amount of time and effort she spent in helping me to improve my work. Without her consistent supervision and patience this thesis could not have reached its present form.

I would like to thank my referees Prof. Dr. Jonathan Brundan and Prof. Dr. Aaron Lauda for their helpful suggestions and comments. Much of my knowledge in this subject is obtained by reading their papers. Their research have had a great influence on this thesis.

Special thanks to Dr. Krzysztof Putyra for all the help he provided throughout my studies.

I would like to express my gratitude to the Institute of Mathematics at the University of Zurich. I have enjoyed a welcoming and supportive staff there throughout my stay for over three years. I also wish to thank Swiss National Science Foundation (SNSF) and the Institute of Mathematics for funding my research.

Last but not least I would like to thank all my friends and my family. I am especially grateful to my parents who have been a great source of motivation and support for me.

Chapter I

Trace of categorified quantum groups

This chapter is divided into two sections. The first section introduces the notion of trace for algebras, categories and 2-categories. The material given here is well-known (see, e.g., [8]). We present Khovanov-Lauda's diagrammatic definition of categorified quantum \mathfrak{sl}_n in the second section. The remaining part of the chapter is devoted to our first main result.

1 Trace functor

1.1 Trace of a ring

Let \mathbb{k} be a field of zero characteristics. The trace of a square matrix with elements in \mathbb{k} is the sum of its diagonal entries. Given two square matrices A, B , the trace satisfies the property

$$\mathrm{tr}(AB) = \mathrm{tr}(BA). \quad (1.1)$$

More generally, for any finite-dimensional \mathbb{k} -vector space V , a trace is a linear map

$$\mathrm{tr}: \mathrm{End}_{\mathbb{k}}(V) \rightarrow \mathbb{k}$$

such that the *trace relation* holds:

$$\mathrm{tr}(fg) = \mathrm{tr}(gf) \quad \text{for any } f, g \in \mathrm{End}_{\mathbb{k}}(V).$$

As a simple invariant of a linear endomorphism, the trace has many important applications. For example, given a representation $\varphi: G \rightarrow \mathrm{Aut}_{\mathbb{k}}(V)$ of a group G , the character $\chi_{\varphi}: G \rightarrow \mathbb{k}$ of the representation φ is the function sending each group element $g \in G$ to the trace of $\varphi(g)$. The character of a representation carries much of the essential information about a representation.

We now generalize the notion of the trace from the ring of endomorphisms of V to any \mathbb{k} -algebra. For a \mathbb{k} -algebra A , the *Hochschild homology* $\mathrm{HH}_*(A)$ of A can be defined as the homology of the Hochschild chain complex

$$C_\bullet = C_\bullet(A): \quad \dots \longrightarrow C_n(A) \xrightarrow{d_n} C_{n-1}(A) \xrightarrow{d_{n-1}} \dots \xrightarrow{d_2} C_1(A) \xrightarrow{d_1} A \longrightarrow 0, \quad (1.2)$$

where $C_n(A) = A^{\otimes n+1}$ and

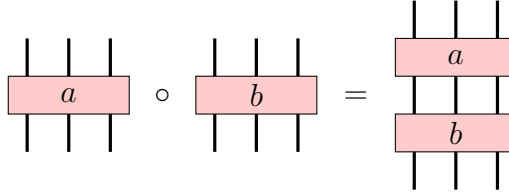
$$d_n(a_0 \otimes \dots \otimes a_n) := \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} (-1)^i a_0 \otimes \dots \otimes a_i a_{i+1} \otimes \dots \otimes a_n + (-1)^n a_n a_0 \otimes a_1 \otimes \dots \otimes a_{n-1}$$

for $a_0, \dots, a_{n-1} \in A$. We define *the trace* or *the cocenter* of A to be the zeroth Hochschild homology $\mathrm{HH}_0(A)$ of A .

Definition 1.1.1. *The trace of a \mathbb{k} -algebra A defined as*

$$\mathrm{Tr} A = \mathrm{HH}_0(A) = A/[A, A] = A / \mathrm{Span}_{\mathbb{k}}\{ab - ba \mid a, b \in A\}.$$

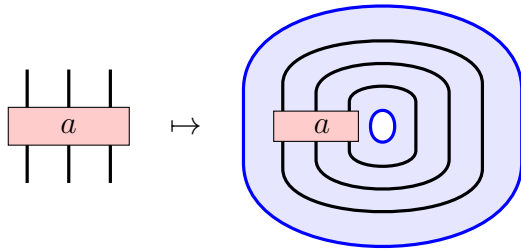
Many interesting algebras can be presented by diagrams in the plane modulo some local relations. Multiplication in A is represented by stacking diagrams on top of each other:



for $a, b \in A$. Then the trace $\mathrm{Tr} A$ can be described by diagrams on the annulus, modulo the same local relations as those for A and the map

$$A \longrightarrow A/[A, A]$$

has a diagrammatic description



Notice that by sliding elements of A around the annulus we see that $ab = ba$ in the quotient $\mathrm{HH}_0(A)$.

The Hochschild cochain complex is defined as

$$C^\bullet = C^\bullet(A): \quad 0 \rightarrow A \xrightarrow{\delta_0} C^0(A) \xrightarrow{\delta_1} C^1(A) \xrightarrow{\delta_2} \dots \xrightarrow{\delta_{n-1}} C^{n-1}(A) \xrightarrow{\delta_n} C^n(A) \longrightarrow \dots,$$

where $C^n(A) = \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{k}}(A^{\otimes n+1}, A)$ and

$$\delta_n(f)(a_0 \otimes \dots \otimes a_n) = \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} (-1)^i f(a_0 \otimes \dots \otimes a_i a_{i+1} \otimes \dots \otimes a_n) + (-1)^n f(a_n a_0 \otimes a_1 \otimes \dots \otimes a_{n-1}),$$

$$\delta_0(a_0)(a_1) = a_0 a_1 - a_1 a_0$$

for $a_0, \dots, a_{n-1} \in A$, $f \in \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{k}}(A^{\otimes n}, A)$. The *Hochschild cohomology* is

$$\mathrm{HH}^n(A) = \ker \delta_n / \mathrm{im} \delta_{n-1}$$

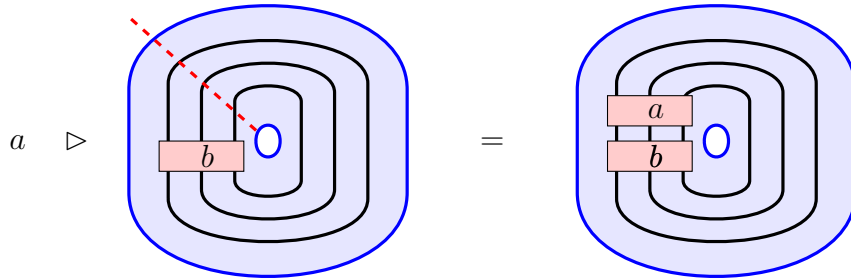
for $n \geq 0$. In particular,

$$\mathrm{HH}^0(A) = \ker \delta_0 = \{a \in A \mid \delta_0(a) = 0\} = \{a \in A \mid a_0 a - a a_0 = 0 \text{ for all } a_0 \in A\}.$$

The zeroth Hochschild cohomology $\mathrm{HH}^0(A)$ of a ring A can be identified with the center of A :

$$\mathrm{HH}^0(A) \cong Z(A).$$

The center $Z(A)$ acts naturally on the trace $\mathrm{Tr} A$. This action can be graphically understood by cutting the diagram of an element $b \in \mathrm{Tr} A$ and inserting the diagram of $a \in Z(A)$:



1.2 Trace of a linear category

A *small category* \mathcal{C} consists of a set of objects $\text{Ob}(\mathcal{C})$ and a set of morphisms $\mathcal{C}(x, y)$ for each pair $x, y \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C})$. We assume that categories are small for the rest of this section. A *\mathbb{k} -linear category* is a category in which hom-sets are \mathbb{k} -linear vector spaces, and compositions of morphisms are bilinear over \mathbb{k} . A \mathbb{k} -algebra can be understood as a \mathbb{k} -linear category with one object. We generalize the notion of trace to \mathbb{k} -linear categories.

Definition 1.2.1. *The trace $\text{Tr } \mathcal{C}$ of the category \mathcal{C} is defined as*

$$\text{Tr } \mathcal{C} = \left(\bigoplus_{x \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C})} \text{End}_{\mathcal{C}}(x) \right) / \text{Span}_{\mathbb{k}}\{f \circ g - g \circ f\}, \quad (1.3)$$

where f and g run through all pairs of morphisms $f: x \rightarrow y$, $g: y \rightarrow x$ and $x, y \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C})$.

We denote the trace class of a morphism f by $[f]$. A *\mathbb{k} -linear functor* between two \mathbb{k} -linear categories \mathcal{C} and \mathcal{D} is a functor $F: \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ such that the map $F: \mathcal{C}(x, y) \rightarrow \mathcal{D}(F(x), F(y))$ is an abelian group homomorphism for $x, y \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C})$. The trace Tr is a \mathbb{k} -linear functor.

An *additive category* is a \mathbb{k} -linear category equipped with a zero object and biproducts, also called direct sums.

Lemma 1.2.2. *If \mathcal{C} is an additive category, then for $f: x \rightarrow x$ and $g: y \rightarrow y$ we have*

$$[f \oplus g] = [f] + [g]$$

in $\text{Tr } \mathcal{C}$.

Proof. Since $f \oplus g = (f \oplus 0) + (0 \oplus g): x \oplus y \rightarrow x \oplus y$, we have

$$[f \oplus g] = [f \oplus 0] + [0 \oplus g].$$

Now we have $[f \oplus 0] = [ifp] = [pif] = [f]$, where $p: x \oplus y \rightarrow x$ and $i: x \rightarrow x \oplus y$ are the projection and the inclusion maps. Similarly, $[0 \oplus g] = [g]$ holds. \square

Example 1.2.3. *Let $\mathcal{C} = \mathbf{Vect}_{\mathbb{k}}$ be the category of finite-dimensional \mathbb{k} -vector spaces. Since any finite-dimensional vector space is isomorphic to a finite direct sum of copies of \mathbb{k} , by Lemma 1.2.2 we have $\text{Tr } \mathbf{Vect}_{\mathbb{k}} = \mathbb{k}$.*

Example 1.2.4. *Let $\mathcal{C} = \mathbf{grVect}_{\mathbb{k}}$ be the category of finite-dimensional \mathbb{Z} -graded vector spaces, i.e. any $V \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C})$ decomposes as $V = \bigoplus_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} V_n$ with $\deg(x) = n$ for any $x \in V_n$,*

and morphisms in $\mathbf{grVect}_{\mathbb{k}}$ are degree preserving. Then $\mathrm{Tr} \mathbf{grVect}_{\mathbb{k}} = \bigoplus_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{k} = \mathbb{k}[q, q^{-1}]$. The multiplication by q is interpreted as a shift of the degree by one.

The previous examples can be further generalized. For a linear category \mathcal{C} there is a universal additive category generated by \mathcal{C} , called the *additive closure* \mathcal{C}^{\oplus} , in which the objects are formal finite direct sums of objects in \mathcal{C} , and the morphisms are matrices of morphisms in \mathcal{C} . There is a canonical fully faithful functor $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}^{\oplus}$. Every linear functor $F: \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ to an additive category \mathcal{D} factors through $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}^{\oplus}$ uniquely up to natural isomorphism. We consider the trace of the additive closure \mathcal{C}^{\oplus} of a linear category \mathcal{C} . The homomorphism

$$\mathrm{Tr} i: \mathrm{Tr} \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathrm{Tr} \mathcal{C}^{\oplus}$$

induced by the canonical functor $i: \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}^{\oplus}$ is an isomorphism. The inverse $\mathrm{tr}: \mathrm{Tr} \mathcal{C}^{\oplus} \rightarrow \mathrm{Tr} \mathcal{C}$ is defined by

$$\mathrm{tr}[(f_{k,l})_{k,l}] = \sum_k [f_{k,k}]$$

for an endomorphism in \mathcal{C}^{\oplus}

$$(f_{k,l})_{k,l \in \{1, \dots, n\}}: x_1 \oplus \dots \oplus x_n \rightarrow x_1 \oplus \dots \oplus x_n$$

with $f_{k,l}: x_l \rightarrow x_k$ in \mathcal{C} .

1.3 Idempotent completions and split Grothendieck group

A *projection* or *idempotent* in $\mathbf{Vect}_{\mathbb{k}}$ is an endomorphism $p: V \rightarrow V$ satisfying the relation $p^2 = p$. In this case $(\mathrm{Id}_V - p): V \rightarrow V$ is also an idempotent, and together these two idempotents decompose the space V into a direct sum of the image of the projection p and the image of the projection $\mathrm{Id}_V - p$.

More generally, an idempotent in a \mathbb{k} -linear category \mathcal{C} is an endomorphism $e: x \rightarrow x$ satisfying $e^2 = e$. An idempotent $e: x \rightarrow x$ in \mathcal{C} is said to *split* if there is an object y and morphisms $g: x \rightarrow y$, $h: y \rightarrow x$ such that $hg = e$ and $gh = 1_y$. The Karoubi envelope $\mathrm{Kar}(\mathcal{C})$ is the category whose objects are pairs (x, e) of objects $x \in \mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{C})$ and an idempotent endomorphism $e: x \rightarrow x$ in \mathcal{C} . The morphisms

$$f: (x, e) \rightarrow (y, e')$$

are morphisms $f: x \rightarrow y$ in \mathcal{C} such that $f = e'fe$. Composition is induced by the composition in \mathcal{C} , and the identity morphism is $e: (x, e) \rightarrow (x, e)$. $\mathrm{Kar}(\mathcal{C})$ is equipped with

a \mathbb{k} -linear category structure. The Karoubi envelope can be thought of as a minimal enlargement of the category \mathcal{C} in which all idempotents split.

We can identify $(x, 1_x)$ with the object x of \mathcal{C} . This identification gives rise to a natural embedding functor $\iota: \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \text{Kar}(\mathcal{C})$ such that $\iota(x) = (x, 1_x)$ for $x \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C})$ and $\iota(f: x \rightarrow y) = f$. The Karoubi envelope $\text{Kar}(\mathcal{C})$ has the universality property that if $F: \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ is a \mathbb{k} -linear functor to a \mathbb{k} -linear category \mathcal{D} with split idempotents, then F extends to a functor from $\text{Kar}(\mathcal{C})$ to \mathcal{D} uniquely up to natural isomorphism. The following proposition illustrates one of the key advantages of the trace, namely its invariance under passing to the Karoubi envelope.

Proposition 1.3.1. *The map $\text{Tr } \iota: \text{Tr } \mathcal{C} \longrightarrow \text{Tr } \text{Kar}(\mathcal{C})$ induced by ι is bijective.*

Proof. Recall that an endomorphism $f: (x, e) \rightarrow (x, e)$ in $\text{Kar}(\mathcal{C})$ is just a morphism $f: x \rightarrow x$ in \mathcal{C} satisfying the condition that $f = efe$. Define a map $u: \text{Tr } \text{Kar}(\mathcal{C}) \longrightarrow \text{Tr } \mathcal{C}$ sending $[f] \in \text{Tr } \text{Kar}(\mathcal{C})$ to $[f] \in \text{Tr } \mathcal{C}$. Then one can check that u is an inverse to $\text{Tr } \iota$. \square

The split Grothendieck group $K_0(\mathcal{C})$ of an additive category \mathcal{C} is an abelian group generated by isomorphism classes $[x]_{\simeq}$ of objects $x \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C})$ modulo the relation $[x \oplus y]_{\simeq} = [x]_{\simeq} + [y]_{\simeq}$. The split Grothendieck group K_0 defines a functor from additive categories to abelian groups.

Example 1.3.2. $K_0(\mathbf{Vect}_{\mathbb{k}}) = \mathbb{Z}$ is generated by $[\mathbb{k}]_{\cong}$.

Define a homomorphism

$$h_{\mathcal{C}}: K_0(\mathcal{C}) \longrightarrow \text{Tr } \mathcal{C}$$

by

$$h_{\mathcal{C}}([x]_{\cong}) = [1_x]$$

for $x \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C})$. Indeed, one can easily check that

$$h_{\mathcal{C}}([x \oplus y]_{\cong}) = [1_x] + [1_y],$$

since $1_{f \oplus g} = 1_f \oplus 1_g$. The map $h_{\mathcal{C}}$ defines a natural transformation

$$h: K_0 \Rightarrow \text{Tr}: \mathbf{AdCat} \rightarrow \mathbf{Ab},$$

where \mathbf{AdCat} denotes the category of additive small categories. The map $h_{\mathcal{C}}$ is called *Chern character map*. It is neither injective nor surjective in general.

A *graded \mathbb{k} -linear category* is a \mathbb{k} -linear category equipped with an auto-equivalence $\langle 1 \rangle: \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$. In a graded \mathbb{k} -linear category, for objects $x, y \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C})$ and a morphism $f: x \rightarrow y$, there exist objects $x\langle t \rangle, y\langle t \rangle \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C})$ and a morphism $f\langle t \rangle: x\langle t \rangle \rightarrow y\langle t \rangle$ for each $t \in \mathbb{Z}$, where $\langle t \rangle$ is $\langle 1 \rangle$ applied $t \in \mathbb{Z}$ times. The trace and the split Grothendieck groups of a graded linear category \mathcal{C} are $\mathbb{Z}[q, q^{-1}]$ -modules such that $[x\langle t \rangle]_{\simeq} = q^t [x]_{\simeq}$, and $[f\langle t \rangle] = q^t [f]$ for $x \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C})$ and $f \in \text{End}(x)$.

A *translation* in \mathcal{C} is a family of natural isomorphisms $x \simeq x\langle t \rangle$ for all $x \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C})$ and $t \in \mathbb{Z}$. Given a graded \mathbb{k} -linear category \mathcal{C} , we can form a category \mathcal{C}^* with the same objects as \mathcal{C} and morphisms

$$\mathcal{C}^*(x, y) = \bigoplus_{t \in \mathbb{Z}} \mathcal{C}(x, y\langle t \rangle). \quad (1.4)$$

The category \mathcal{C}^* admits a translation, since for any $x \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C})$ and $t \in \mathbb{Z}$ the natural isomorphism $x \simeq x\langle t \rangle$ is given by $1_x \in \mathcal{C}(x, x) = \mathcal{C}(x, x\langle t \rangle\langle -t \rangle) \subset \mathcal{C}^*(x, x\langle t \rangle)$ together with the inverse map $1_{x\langle t \rangle} \in \mathcal{C}(x\langle t \rangle, x\langle t \rangle) = \mathcal{C}(x\langle t \rangle, x\langle 0 \rangle\langle t \rangle) \subset \mathcal{C}^*(x\langle t \rangle, x)$.

The isomorphism $x \simeq x\langle t \rangle$ forgets the q -grading by setting $q = 1$ on the split Grothendieck group and makes $K_0(\mathcal{C}^*)$ a \mathbb{Z} -module. The same is also true for $\text{Tr } \mathcal{C}^*$ since $[f\langle t \rangle] = [f]$ for any endomorphism $f: x \rightarrow x$.

However, hom-spaces of \mathcal{C}^* contain degree t morphisms $\mathcal{C}^*(x, y\langle t \rangle)$ for all $t \in \mathbb{Z}$. Hence $\text{Tr } \mathcal{C}^*$ decomposes into equivalence classes of morphisms of degree t :

$$\text{Tr } \mathcal{C}^*(x, y) = \bigoplus_{t \in \mathbb{Z}} \text{Tr } \mathcal{C}(x, y\langle t \rangle). \quad (1.5)$$

Thus, $\text{Tr } \mathcal{C}^*(x, y)$ is a \mathbb{Z} -graded abelian group.

1.4 Pivotal categories

Definition 1.4.1. A (strict) monoidal category (or tensor category) is a category \mathcal{C} equipped with a bifunctor $\otimes: \mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$, called *tensor product*, such that

- the tensor product is associative: for any $\alpha, \beta, \gamma \in \mathcal{C}$ we have

$$(\alpha \otimes \beta) \otimes \gamma = \alpha \otimes (\beta \otimes \gamma),$$

- there exists an object $\mathbf{1}$, called the *unit object*, such that for each $A \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C})$,

$$A = A \otimes \mathbf{1} = \mathbf{1} \otimes A.$$

For example, the category $\mathbf{Vect}_{\mathbb{k}}$ is monoidal with the usual tensor product of vector spaces and the unit object \mathbb{k} . A *pivotal category* is a monoidal category such that for each object $A \in \mathcal{C}$ there is an associated dual object $A^* \in \mathcal{C}$, and there are four morphisms

$$\begin{aligned} \text{ev}_A: A^* \otimes A &\rightarrow \mathbf{1}, & \text{coev}_A: \mathbf{1} &\rightarrow A^* \otimes A, \\ \widetilde{\text{ev}}_A: A \otimes A^* &\rightarrow \mathbf{1}, & \widetilde{\text{coev}}_A: \mathbf{1} &\rightarrow A \otimes A^*, \end{aligned}$$

such that the following biadjointness relations hold:

$$(\widetilde{\text{ev}}_A \otimes 1_A)(1_A \otimes \widetilde{\text{coev}}_A) = (1_A \otimes \text{ev}_A)(\text{coev}_A \otimes 1_A) = 1_A,$$

$$(\text{ev}_A \otimes 1_{A^*})(1_{A^*} \otimes \text{coev}_A) = (1_{A^*} \otimes \widetilde{\text{ev}}_A)(\widetilde{\text{coev}}_A \otimes 1_{A^*}) = 1_{A^*},$$

where 1_A is the identity morphism of A . For a morphism $f: A \rightarrow B$ in a pivotal category \mathcal{C} , the morphisms

$$f^* = (\text{ev}_B \otimes 1_{A^*})(1_B \otimes f \otimes 1_{A^*})(1_{B^*} \otimes \text{coev}_A) : B^* \rightarrow A^*,$$

$${}^*f = (1_{A^*} \otimes \widetilde{\text{ev}}_B)(1_{A^*} \otimes f \otimes 1_{B^*})(\widetilde{\text{coev}}_A \otimes 1_{B^*}) : B^* \rightarrow A^*$$

are called left and right duals of f , and the monoidal natural transformation

$$\varphi = \{\varphi_A = (\widetilde{\text{ev}}_A \otimes 1_{A^{**}})(1_A \otimes \text{coev}_{A^*}) : A \rightarrow A^{**}\}_{A \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C})}$$

is called the *pivotal structure*. In what follows, we shall see that a pivotal category and its trace admit well-defined diagrammatic descriptions when the left and right duals coincide.

1.5 2-categories and trace

Definition 1.5.1. A 2-category \mathcal{C} consists of the following data.

- A collection of objects.
- For each pair of objects x, y , a category $\mathcal{C}(x, y)$. The objects of $\mathcal{C}(x, y)$ are called 1-morphisms from x to y . For any $u, u' \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C}(x, y))$, morphisms $f: u \rightarrow u'$ are called 2-morphisms.
- There is a composition of 1-morphisms: if $u \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C}(x, y))$ and $v \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C}(y, z))$, then $vu \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C}(x, z))$. This composition is associative: for any object ζ and $w \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C}(z, \zeta))$ we have

$$(wv)u = w(vu).$$

- *There is a horizontal composition of 2-morphisms: if $u, u' \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C}(x, y))$, $f: u \rightarrow u'$ and $v, v' \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C}(y, z))$, $g: v \rightarrow v'$, then there exists a 2-morphism $g * f: vu \rightarrow v'u'$. The horizontal composition is associative.*
- *2-morphisms can also be composed vertically: if $u, u', u'' \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C}(x, y))$, $f: u \rightarrow u'$ and, $f': u' \rightarrow u''$, then there is a 2-morphism $f'f: u \rightarrow u''$. This composition is associative. Moreover, let $v, v', v'' \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C}(y, z))$, $g: v \rightarrow v'$ and, $g': v' \rightarrow v''$. The following rule holds between horizontal and vertical compositions of 2-morphisms:*

$$(g'g) * (f'f) = (g' * f')(g * f).$$

- *For every object x there is an identity 1-morphism $1_x \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C}(x, x))$ such that for any $u \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C}(x, y))$, we have $1_y u = u 1_x = u$.*
- *For every 1-morphism $u \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C}(x, y))$ there exists an identity 2-morphism 1_u such that for all $u' \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C}(x, y))$ and $f: u \rightarrow u'$, we have $1_{u'} f = f 1_u = f$ and $1_{1_y} * f = f * 1_{1_x} = f$. Additionally, the identity 2-morphisms must be compatible with composition of 1-morphisms: $1_v * 1_u = 1_{vu}$ for any $v \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C}(y, z))$.*

In the literature, this definition usually belongs to a strict 2-category in order to distinguish it from a weaker one, called bicategory. In this thesis, we will only discuss strict 2-categories. For example, a monoidal category \mathcal{C} is a 2-category with one object $*$ and $\text{End}(*) = \mathcal{C}$. **Cat**, the category of small categories, is the 2-category whose objects are (small) categories, morphisms are functors, and 2-morphisms are natural transformations between functors.

Definition 1.5.2. *A 2-functor $F: \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ from a 2-category \mathcal{C} to a 2-category \mathcal{D} consists of*

- *a function $F: \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C}) \rightarrow \text{Ob}(\mathcal{D})$, and*
- *for each pair of objects x, y in \mathcal{C} , a functor $F: \mathcal{C}(x, y) \rightarrow \mathcal{D}(Fx, Fy)$.*

1.6 Kar, K_0 and Tr for 2-categories

A 2-category \mathcal{C} is \mathbb{k} -linear if the categories $\mathcal{C}(x, y)$ are \mathbb{k} -linear for all objects x, y in \mathcal{C} , and the composition functor preserves the \mathbb{k} -linear structure. Similarly, an additive \mathbb{k} -linear 2-category is a \mathbb{k} -linear 2-category in which the categories $\mathcal{C}(x, y)$ are additive.

A *graded linear 2-category* is a 2-category whose hom-spaces form graded linear categories, and the composition map preserves degree.

The following definitions extend notions of trace, split Grothendieck group and Karoubi envelope to the 2-categorical setting.

- Given an additive \mathbb{k} -linear 2-category \mathcal{C} , define the split Grothendieck group $K_0(\mathcal{C})$ of \mathcal{C} to be the \mathbb{k} -linear category with $\text{Ob}(K_0(\mathcal{C})) = \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C})$ and with $K_0(\mathcal{C})(x, y) := K_0(\mathcal{C}(x, y))$ for any two objects $x, y \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C})$. For $[f]_{\cong} \in K_0(\mathcal{C})(x, y)$ and $[g]_{\cong} \in K_0(\mathcal{C})(y, z)$ the composition in $K_0(\mathcal{C})$ is defined by $[g]_{\cong} \circ [f]_{\cong} := [g \circ f]_{\cong}$.
- The trace $\text{Tr } \mathcal{C}$ of a \mathbb{k} -linear 2-category is the \mathbb{k} -linear category with $\text{Ob}(\text{Tr } \mathcal{C}) = \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C})$ and with $\text{Tr } \mathcal{C}(x, y) := \text{Tr } \mathcal{C}(x, y)$ for any two objects $x, y \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C})$. For a 2-endomorphism σ in $\mathcal{C}(x, y)$ and a 2-endomorphism τ in $\mathcal{C}(y, z)$, we have $[\tau] \circ [\sigma] = [\tau \circ \sigma]$. The identity morphism for $x \in \text{Ob}(\text{Tr } \mathcal{C}) = \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C})$ is given by $[1_x]$.
- The Karoubi envelope $\text{Kar}(\mathcal{C})$ of a \mathbb{k} -linear 2-category \mathcal{C} is the \mathbb{k} -linear 2-category with $\text{Ob}(\text{Kar}(\mathcal{C})) = \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C})$ and with hom-categories $\text{Kar}(\mathcal{C})(x, y) := \text{Kar}(\mathcal{C}(x, y))$. The composition functor $\text{Kar}(\mathcal{C})(y, z) \times \text{Kar}(\mathcal{C})(x, y) \rightarrow \text{Kar}(\mathcal{C})(x, z)$ is induced by the universal property of the Karoubi envelope from the composition functor in \mathcal{C} . The fully-faithful additive functors $\mathcal{C}(x, y) \rightarrow \text{Kar}(\mathcal{C}(x, y))$ form an additive 2-functor $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \text{Kar}(\mathcal{C})$ that is universal with respect to splitting idempotents in the hom-categories $\mathcal{C}(x, y)$.

A 2-functor $F: \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ between \mathbb{k} -linear 2-categories \mathcal{C} and \mathcal{D} is a \mathbb{k} -linear 2-functor if for objects x, y in \mathcal{C} the functor $F: \mathcal{C}(x, y) \rightarrow \mathcal{D}(x, y)$ is \mathbb{k} -linear. In this case F induces a \mathbb{k} -linear functor

$$\text{Tr } F: \text{Tr } \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \text{Tr } \mathcal{D},$$

such that

$$\text{Tr } F = F: \text{Ob}(\text{Tr } \mathcal{C}) \rightarrow \text{Ob}(\text{Tr } \mathcal{D})$$

on the objects, and for $x, y \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C})$

$$(\text{Tr } F)_{x, y} = \text{Tr}(F_{x, y}): \text{Tr } \mathcal{C}(x, y) \rightarrow \text{Tr } \mathcal{D}(F(x), F(y)).$$

Let \mathcal{C} be a \mathbb{k} -linear 2-category. The *center* $Z(x)$ of an object $x \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C})$ is the commutative ring of endomorphisms $\mathcal{C}(1_x, 1_x)$. We call $Z(\mathcal{C}) = \bigoplus_{x \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C})} Z(x)$ the *center of objects* of \mathcal{C} .

We call \mathcal{C} a *pivotal 2-category* if for every 1-morphism $u: x \rightarrow y$ there exists a biadjoint morphism $u^*: y \rightarrow x$, together with 2-morphisms

$$\text{ev}_u: u^*u \rightarrow 1_x, \quad \text{coev}_u: 1_y \rightarrow uu^*, \quad (1.6)$$

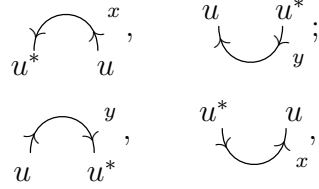
$$\widetilde{\text{ev}}_u: uu^* \rightarrow 1_y, \quad \widetilde{\text{coev}}_u: 1_x \rightarrow u^*u \quad (1.7)$$

such that biadjointness relations

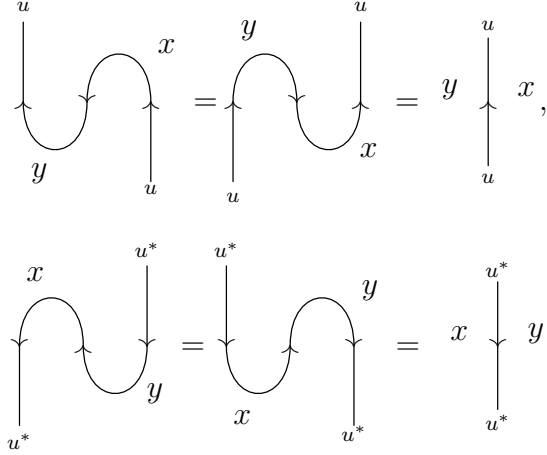
$$(\widetilde{\text{ev}}_u \otimes 1_u)(1_u \otimes \widetilde{\text{coev}}_u) = (1_u \otimes \text{ev}_u)(\text{coev}_u \otimes 1_u) = 1_u, \quad (1.8)$$

$$(\text{ev}_u \otimes 1_{u^*})(1_{u^*} \otimes \text{coev}_u) = (1_{u^*} \otimes \widetilde{\text{ev}}_u)(\widetilde{\text{coev}}_u \otimes 1_{u^*}) = 1_{u^*} \quad (1.9)$$

hold. Pivotal 2-categories admit rich a diagrammatic presentation in the following way. We denote the objects by areas labeled with the objects. Then 1-morphisms are described by the vertices of the diagrams separating two regions, and 2-morphisms are the edges of the diagrams. The horizontal composition of two diagrams $A \circ B$ places A to the right of B in the plane. The vertical composition AB of two diagrams means the stacking of A on top of B . The 2-morphisms (1.6) and (1.7) can be depicted as



and the relations (1.8) and (1.9) are



In a pivotal 2-category \mathcal{C} we can define the left and right duals of a given 2-morphism $f: u \rightarrow v$ as follows:

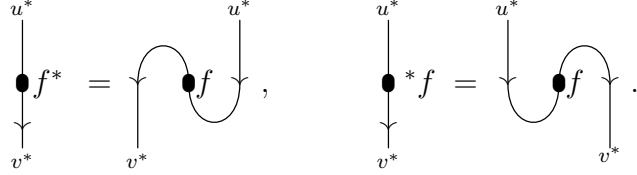
$$f^* := (\text{ev}_v \otimes 1_{u^*})(1_v \otimes f \otimes 1_{u^*})(1_{v^*} \otimes \text{coev}_u) : v^* \rightarrow u^*,$$

$${}^*f := (1_{u^*} \otimes \widetilde{\text{ev}}_v)(1_{u^*} \otimes f \otimes 1_{v^*})(\widetilde{\text{coev}}_u \otimes 1_{v^*}) : v^* \rightarrow u^*.$$

Diagrammatically, the right and left duals of the 2-morphism



can be depicted as



A pivotal 2-category \mathcal{C} is called *cyclic* if the left and right duals of all 2-morphisms are equal. In a cyclic category \mathcal{C} there is a well-defined action of the trace $\text{Tr } \mathcal{C}$ on the center of objects $Z(\mathcal{C})$ as follows. Let $u: x \rightarrow y$ be a 1-morphism, $[f]$ denote the trace class of a 2-morphism $f: u \rightarrow u$, and $a \in Z(x)$. Then we define the map $[f]: Z(x) \rightarrow Z(y)$,

$$[f](a) = \tilde{\text{ev}}_u \circ (f \otimes a \otimes 1_{u^*}) \circ \text{coev}_u.$$

In terms of diagrams an element in $Z(x)$ is a closed diagram at a region labeled by x . The action of the trace corresponds to the closure of diagram f around a , and this will give us a closed diagram at region y :

$$\begin{array}{c}
 a \\
 * \\
 x
 \end{array}
 \mapsto
 \begin{array}{c}
 f \\
 \bullet \\
 a \\
 * \\
 y
 \end{array}
 , \tag{1.10}$$

1.7 Horizontal trace of a 2-category

A more general notion of trace of a 2-category \mathcal{C} is introduced in [7]. It is called the *horizontal trace*, denoted by $\text{Tr}^h \mathcal{C}$.

Definition 1.7.1. *The horizontal trace $\text{Tr}^h \mathcal{C}$ of a 2-category \mathcal{C} is a \mathbb{k} -linear category in which objects are 1-endomorphisms $f: x \rightarrow x$, $x \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C})$. Morphisms from $f: x \rightarrow x$ to $g: y \rightarrow y$ are equivalence classes $[p, \sigma]$ of pairs (p, σ) of a morphism $p: x \rightarrow y$ in \mathcal{C} and a 2-morphism*

$$\sigma: p \circ f \Rightarrow g \circ p: x \rightarrow y,$$

depicted by the commuting diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} x & \xrightarrow{f} & x \\ p \downarrow & \swarrow \sigma & \downarrow p \\ y & \xrightarrow{g} & y \end{array},$$

where the equivalence relation on such pairs is generated by

$$(p, (g \circ \tau)\sigma) \sim (p', \sigma(\tau \circ f)),$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \begin{array}{ccc} x & \xrightarrow{f} & x \\ p \downarrow & \swarrow \sigma & \downarrow p \\ y & \xrightarrow{g} & y \end{array} & \sim & \begin{array}{ccc} x & \xrightarrow{f} & x \\ p' \downarrow & \swarrow \sigma & \downarrow p \\ y & \xrightarrow{g} & y \end{array} \end{array}$$

for $p, p': x \rightarrow y$, $\sigma: p \circ f \Rightarrow g \circ p': x \rightarrow y$, $\tau: p' \Rightarrow p: x \rightarrow y$. The composition of morphisms $[p, \sigma]: (f: x \rightarrow x) \rightarrow (g: y \rightarrow y)$ and $[q, \tau]: (g: y \rightarrow y) \rightarrow (h: z \rightarrow z)$ is defined by

$$[q, \tau][p, \sigma] = [qp, (\tau \circ p)(q \circ \sigma)].$$

The identity morphism is given by

$$1_f = [1_x, 1_f]$$

for $f: x \rightarrow x$.

There is a canonical functor $i: \text{Tr } \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \text{Tr}^h \mathcal{C}$ defined as follows. For an object $x \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C})$ in $\text{Tr } \mathcal{C}$, set

$$i(x) = (1_x: x \rightarrow x).$$

For a morphism $[\sigma: f \Rightarrow f: x \rightarrow y]: x \rightarrow y$ in $\text{Tr } \mathcal{C}$, set

$$i([\sigma]) = [f, \sigma: f \circ 1_x \Rightarrow 1_y \circ f].$$

The functor i is full and faithful. Thus, $\text{Tr}^h \mathcal{C}$ has more information about \mathcal{C} than $\text{Tr } \mathcal{C}$.

2 The categorified quantum \mathfrak{sl}_n

In this section we will set our notation for \mathfrak{sl}_n weight lattice. We will then introduce the quantum \mathfrak{sl}_n and its diagrammatic categorification $\mathcal{U}_Q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$ by Khovanov and Lauda. There is an alternative categorification of the quantum \mathfrak{sl}_n , which is given by Rouquier [53]. Brundan [12] proves the isomorphism between Rouquier's 2-category and $\mathcal{U}_Q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$.

2.1 Cartan datum for \mathfrak{sl}_n

Let $I = \{1, 2, \dots, n-1\}$ be the set of vertices of the Dynkin diagram of type A_{n-1} , $n \geq 2$:

$$\overset{1}{\circ} \text{---} \overset{2}{\circ} \text{---} \overset{3}{\circ} \text{---} \dots \text{---} \overset{n-1}{\circ}. \quad (2.1)$$

Simple roots are defined as $\alpha_i = (0, \dots, 0, 1, -1, 0, \dots, 0) \in \mathbb{Z}^n$, $i \in I$, where 1 occurs in the i -th component. Let (\cdot, \cdot) be the standard scalar product on \mathbb{Z}^n . Then

$$a_{ij} = (\alpha_i, \alpha_j) = \begin{cases} 2 & \text{if } i = j, \\ -1 & \text{if } |i - j| = 1, \\ 0 & \text{if } |i - j| > 1 \end{cases}$$

are the entries of the Cartan matrix associated to \mathfrak{sl}_n .

We will call the elements $\omega_i = (1, \dots, 1, 0, \dots, 0) \in \mathbb{Z}_+^n$, $i \in I$ with i number of 1's the *fundamental weights*. Notice that we have $(\omega_i, \alpha_j) = \delta_{ij}$. Fundamental weights generate the integral \mathfrak{sl}_n -weight lattice X over \mathbb{Z} .

By $\mathcal{P}(n, N)$ we denote n -compositions of N – the set of n -tuples of non-negative integers which sum up to a positive integer N , and by $\mathcal{P}^+(n, N)$ the set of n -partitions of N , that is, elements $\lambda = (\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_n) \in \mathcal{P}(n, N)$ such that $\lambda_i \geq \lambda_{i+1}$ for all $i \in I$. For each composition $\nu = (\nu_1, \nu_2, \dots, \nu_n) \in \mathcal{P}(n, N)$ there is a corresponding \mathfrak{sl}_n weight $\bar{\nu} = \sum_{i \in I} (\nu_i - \nu_{i+1}) \omega_i$. Note that $\bar{\nu}$ does not define ν uniquely unless we fix N . We will sometimes abuse the notation and write $\bar{\nu} = (\bar{\nu}_1, \bar{\nu}_2, \dots, \bar{\nu}_{n-1}) \in \mathbb{Z}^{n-1}$, $\bar{\nu}_i = \nu_i - \nu_{i+1}$ although $\bar{\nu}$ is not a composition. If $\bar{\nu}_i \geq 0$ for all $i \in I$, we call $\bar{\nu}$ a dominant integral weight. If $\lambda \in \mathcal{P}^+(n, N)$, then $\bar{\lambda}$ is a dominant weight.

Define the composition $\nu + \alpha_i \in \mathcal{P}(n, N)$ as

$$\nu + \alpha_i = (\nu_1, \dots, \nu_{i-1}, \nu_i + 1, \nu_{i+1} - 1, \nu_{i+2}, \dots, \nu_n)$$

if $\nu_{i+1} > 0$ and \emptyset otherwise. Similarly,

$$\nu - \alpha_i = (\nu_1, \dots, \nu_{i-1}, \nu_i - 1, \nu_{i+1} + 1, \nu_{i+2}, \dots, \nu_n)$$

for $\nu_i > 0$ and \emptyset if $\nu_i = 0$. In this case we have

$$\overline{\nu + \alpha_i} = \begin{cases} (\bar{\nu}_1 + 2, \bar{\nu}_2 - 1, \bar{\nu}_3, \dots, \bar{\nu}_{n-2}, \bar{\nu}_{n-1}) & \text{if } i = 1, \\ (\bar{\nu}_1, \bar{\nu}_2, \dots, \bar{\nu}_{n-2}, \bar{\nu}_{n-1} - 1, \bar{\nu}_{n-1} + 2) & \text{if } i = n - 1, \\ (\bar{\nu}_1, \dots, \bar{\nu}_{i-1} - 1, \bar{\nu}_i + 2, \bar{\nu}_{i+1} - 1, \dots, \bar{\nu}_{n-1}) & \text{if } 1 < i < n - 1, \end{cases}$$

$$\overline{\nu - \alpha_i} = \begin{cases} (\bar{\nu}_1 - 2, \bar{\nu}_2 + 1, \bar{\nu}_3, \dots, \bar{\nu}_{n-2}, \bar{\nu}_{n-1}) & \text{if } i = 1, \\ (\bar{\nu}_1, \bar{\nu}_2, \dots, \bar{\nu}_{n-2}, \bar{\nu}_{n-1} + 1, \bar{\nu}_{n-1} - 2) & \text{if } i = n - 1, \\ (\bar{\nu}_1, \dots, \bar{\nu}_{i-1} + 1, \bar{\nu}_i - 2, \bar{\nu}_{i+1} + 1, \dots, \bar{\nu}_{n-1}) & \text{if } 1 < i < n - 1. \end{cases}$$

2.2 The quantum group $\mathbf{U}_q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$

The algebra $\mathbf{U}_q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$ is the unital $\mathbb{Q}(q)$ -algebra generated by the elements E_i, F_i and K_i, K_i^- for $i \in I$ together with the following relations:

$$\begin{aligned} K_i^{-1}K_i &= K_iK_i^{-1} = 1, & K_iK_j &= K_jK_i, \\ K_iE_jK_i^{-1} &= q^{a_{ij}}E_j, & K_iF_jK_i^{-1} &= q^{-a_{ij}}F_j, \\ E_iF_j - F_jE_i &= \delta_{ij} \frac{K_i - K_i^{-1}}{q - q^{-1}}, \\ E_i^2E_j - (q + q^{-1})E_iE_jE_i + E_jE_i^2 &= 0 & \text{if } a_{ij} = -1, \\ F_i^2F_j - (q + q^{-1})F_iF_jF_i + F_jF_i^2 &= 0 & \text{if } a_{ij} = -1, \\ E_iE_j &= E_jE_i, & F_iF_j &= F_jF_i & \text{if } a_{ij} = 0. \end{aligned}$$

Let $\dot{\mathbf{U}}_q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$ be Lusztig's idempotent version of $\mathbf{U}_q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$, where the unit is replaced by a collection of orthogonal idempotents $1_{\bar{\nu}}$ indexed by the weight lattice X of \mathfrak{sl}_n ,

$$1_{\bar{\nu}}1_{\bar{\nu}'} = \delta_{\bar{\nu}\bar{\nu}'}1_{\bar{\nu}}, \quad (2.2)$$

such that if $\bar{\nu} = (\bar{\nu}_1, \bar{\nu}_2, \dots, \bar{\nu}_{n-1})$, then

$$K_i1_{\bar{\nu}} = 1_{\bar{\nu}}K_i = q^{\bar{\nu}_i}1_{\bar{\nu}}, \quad E_i1_{\bar{\nu}} = 1_{\bar{\nu} + \alpha_i}E_i, \quad F_i1_{\bar{\nu}} = 1_{\bar{\nu} - \alpha_i}F_i. \quad (2.3)$$

$\dot{\mathbf{U}}_q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$ can be viewed as a category with objects $\bar{\nu} \in X$ and morphisms given by compositions of E_i and F_i with $1 \leq i < n$ modulo the above relations.

For $\mathcal{A} := \mathbb{Z}[q, q^{-1}]$, the \mathcal{A} -algebra ${}_{\mathcal{A}}\dot{\mathcal{U}}_q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$, the integral form of $\dot{\mathcal{U}}_q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$ is generated by products of divided powers $E_i^{(a)}\mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}} := \frac{E_i^a}{[a]!}\mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}}$, $F_i^{(a)}\mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}} := \frac{F_i^a}{[a]!}\mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}}$ for $\bar{\nu} \in X$ and $i \in I$. The subalgebra ${}_{\mathcal{A}}\dot{\mathcal{U}}_q^+(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$ generated by $E_i^{(a)}\mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}}$, $\bar{\nu} \in X$ is called the *positive half* of ${}_{\mathcal{A}}\dot{\mathcal{U}}_q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$.

2.3 The 2-category $\mathcal{U}_Q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$

Here we describe a categorification of $\mathbf{U}_q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$ by M. Khovanov and A. Lauda. From now on we assume that the underlying field is complex field. Fix the following choice of scalars Q consisting of $\{t_{ij}\}_{i,j \in I}$ such that

- $t_{ii} = 1$ for all $i \in I$ and $t_{ij} \in \mathbb{C}^*$ for $i \neq j$,
- $t_{ij} = t_{ji}$ if $a_{ij} = 0$,

and a choice of bubble parameters $c_{i,\bar{\nu}} \in \mathbb{C}^*$ for $i \in I$ and a weight $\bar{\nu}$ such that

$$c_{j,\bar{\nu}+\alpha_j}/c_{i,\bar{\nu}} = t_{ij}.$$

Definition 2.3.1. *The 2-category $\mathcal{U}_Q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$ is the graded linear 2-category consisting of:*

- *objects are \mathfrak{sl}_n weights $\bar{\nu}$.*
- *1-morphisms are formal direct sums of (degree shifts of) compositions of*

$$\mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}}, \quad \mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}+\alpha_i}\mathcal{E}_i = \mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}+\alpha_i}\mathcal{E}_i\mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}} = \mathcal{E}_i\mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}}, \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}-\alpha_i}\mathcal{F}_i = \mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}-\alpha_i}\mathcal{F}_i\mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}} = \mathcal{F}_i\mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}}$$

for $i \in I$ and a weight $\bar{\nu}$.

- *2-morphisms are \mathbb{C} -vector spaces spanned by compositions of the following tangle-like diagrams label by $i \in I$:*

$$\begin{array}{c} \bar{\nu}+\alpha_i \\ \uparrow \\ i \\ \downarrow \\ \bar{\nu} \end{array} : \mathcal{E}_i\mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}_i\mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}}, \quad \begin{array}{c} \bar{\nu}-\alpha_i \\ \uparrow \\ i \\ \downarrow \\ \bar{\nu} \end{array} : \mathcal{F}_i\mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_i\mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}}, \quad (2.4)$$

$$\begin{array}{c} \bar{\nu}+\alpha_i \\ \uparrow \\ \bullet \\ i \\ \downarrow \\ \bar{\nu} \end{array} : \mathcal{E}_i\mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}_i\mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}}\langle 2 \rangle, \quad \begin{array}{c} \bar{\nu}-\alpha_i \\ \uparrow \\ \bullet \\ i \\ \downarrow \\ \bar{\nu} \end{array} : \mathcal{F}_i\mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_i\mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}}\langle 2 \rangle, \quad (2.5)$$

$$\begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ i \\ \searrow \\ \nearrow \\ j \\ \searrow \\ \bar{\nu} \end{array} : \mathcal{E}_i\mathcal{E}_j\mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}_j\mathcal{E}_i\mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}}\langle -a_{ij} \rangle, \quad \begin{array}{c} \searrow \\ i \\ \swarrow \\ \searrow \\ j \\ \swarrow \\ \bar{\nu} \end{array} : \mathcal{F}_i\mathcal{F}_j\mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_j\mathcal{F}_i\mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}}\langle -a_{ij} \rangle, \quad (2.6)$$

$$\begin{array}{c} \curvearrowright \\ i \\ \curvearrowleft \\ \bar{\nu} \end{array} : \mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_i\mathcal{E}_i\mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}}\langle 1 + \bar{\nu}_i \rangle, \quad \begin{array}{c} \curvearrowleft \\ i \\ \curvearrowright \\ \bar{\nu} \end{array} : \mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}_i\mathcal{F}_i\mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}}\langle 1 - \bar{\nu}_i \rangle, \quad (2.7)$$

$$\overleftarrow{\curvearrowright}^i_{\bar{\nu}} : \mathcal{F}_i \mathcal{E}_i \mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}} \rightarrow \mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}} \langle 1 + \bar{\nu}_i \rangle, \quad \overrightarrow{\curvearrowright}^i_{\bar{\nu}} : \mathcal{E}_i \mathcal{F}_i \mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}} \rightarrow \mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}} \langle 1 - \bar{\nu}_i \rangle. \quad (2.8)$$

The two 2-morphisms (2.4) are identity 2-morphisms. We read diagrams from right to left and from bottom to top. That is, the horizontal composition of the 2-morphisms corresponds to drawing the respective diagrams side by side from right to left, and vertical composition means stacking diagrams on top of each other. If the labels of the strands do not match in the vertical composition, then we set the composition to zero. Isotopies are allowed as long as they do not change the combinatorial type of a diagram.

The 2-morphisms satisfy the following relations:

1. The identity morphisms of $\mathcal{E}_i \mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}}$ and $\mathcal{F}_i \mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}}$ are biadjoint up to a degree shift:

$$\overleftarrow{\curvearrowright}^{\overline{\nu + \alpha_i}}_{\bar{\nu}} = \overline{\nu + \alpha_i} \Big|_{i}^{\bar{\nu}}, \quad \overrightarrow{\curvearrowright}^{\bar{\nu}}_{\overline{\nu - \alpha_i}} = \overline{\nu - \alpha_i} \Big|_{i}^{\bar{\nu}}, \quad (2.9)$$

$$\overrightarrow{\curvearrowright}^{\bar{\nu}}_{\overline{\nu + \alpha_i}} = \overline{\nu + \alpha_i} \Big|_{i}^{\bar{\nu}}, \quad \overleftarrow{\curvearrowright}^{\overline{\nu - \alpha_i}}_{\bar{\nu}} = \overline{\nu - \alpha_i} \Big|_{i}^{\bar{\nu}}. \quad (2.10)$$

2. The 2-morphisms are cyclic with respect to this biadjoint structure:

$$\overline{\nu - \alpha_i} \overrightarrow{\curvearrowright}^{\bar{\nu}}_{\overline{\nu - \alpha_i}} = \overline{\nu - \alpha_i} \Big|_{i}^{\bar{\nu}} = \overleftarrow{\curvearrowright}^{\overline{\nu - \alpha_i}}_{\bar{\nu}}. \quad (2.11)$$

The cyclicity for crossings are given by

$$\overleftarrow{\times}^{\bar{\nu}}_{i,j} = \overleftarrow{\curvearrowright}^{\bar{\nu}}_{\overline{\nu - \alpha_i}} \overleftarrow{\curvearrowright}^{\bar{\nu}}_{\overline{\nu - \alpha_j}} = \overleftarrow{\curvearrowright}^{\bar{\nu}}_{\overline{\nu - \alpha_j}} \overleftarrow{\curvearrowright}^{\bar{\nu}}_{\overline{\nu - \alpha_i}}. \quad (2.12)$$

Sideways crossings are defined by the equalities:

$$\overrightarrow{\times}^{\bar{\nu}}_{j,i} = \overrightarrow{\curvearrowright}^{\bar{\nu}}_{\overline{\nu + \alpha_j}} \overrightarrow{\curvearrowright}^{\bar{\nu}}_{\overline{\nu + \alpha_i}} = \overrightarrow{\curvearrowright}^{\bar{\nu}}_{\overline{\nu + \alpha_i}} \overrightarrow{\curvearrowright}^{\bar{\nu}}_{\overline{\nu + \alpha_j}}, \quad (2.13)$$

$$\begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ j \searrow \\ \times \\ i \end{array} \bar{\nu} = \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{c} i \\ \downarrow \\ \nearrow \\ j \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \downarrow \\ i \\ \downarrow \\ \bar{\nu} \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} \downarrow \\ j \\ \downarrow \\ i \end{array} \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{c} i \\ \downarrow \\ \downarrow \\ j \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \downarrow \\ j \\ \downarrow \\ \bar{\nu} \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} \downarrow \\ i \end{array} \end{array}, \quad (2.14)$$

where the second equalities in (2.13) and (2.14) follow from (2.12).

3. The following local relations hold for upwards oriented strands:

$$\begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ i \searrow \\ \times \\ j \end{array} \bar{\nu} = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } a_{ij} = 2, \\ t_{ij} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ i \\ \uparrow \\ j \end{array} \bar{\nu} & \text{if } a_{ij} = 0, \\ t_{ij} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ i \\ \bullet \\ \uparrow \\ j \end{array} \bar{\nu} + t_{ji} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ i \\ \uparrow \\ j \\ \bullet \end{array} \bar{\nu} & \text{if } a_{ij} = -1. \end{cases} \quad (2.15)$$

ii) The nilHecke dot sliding relations

$$\begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ i \bullet \searrow \\ \times \\ i \end{array} \bar{\nu} - \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ i \searrow \\ \times \\ i \bullet \end{array} \bar{\nu} = \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ i \bullet \searrow \\ \times \\ i \end{array} \bar{\nu} - \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ i \searrow \\ \times \\ i \bullet \end{array} \bar{\nu} = \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ i \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ i \end{array} \bar{\nu} \quad (2.16)$$

hold.

iii) For $i \neq j$ the dot sliding relations

$$\begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ i \bullet \searrow \\ \times \\ j \end{array} \bar{\nu} = \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ i \searrow \\ \times \\ j \bullet \end{array} \bar{\nu}, \quad \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ i \bullet \searrow \\ \times \\ j \end{array} \bar{\nu} = \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ i \searrow \\ \times \\ j \bullet \end{array} \bar{\nu} \quad (2.17)$$

hold.

iv) If $i \neq k$ and $a_{ij} \geq 0$, the relation

$$\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ i \bullet \searrow \\ \times \\ j \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \downarrow \\ k \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} \downarrow \\ i \end{array} \end{array} \bar{\nu} = \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ i \searrow \\ \times \\ j \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \downarrow \\ k \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} \downarrow \\ i \end{array} \end{array} \bar{\nu} \quad (2.18)$$

holds. Otherwise if $a_{ij} = -1$, we have

$$\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ i \bullet \searrow \\ \times \\ j \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \downarrow \\ i \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} \downarrow \\ i \end{array} \end{array} \bar{\nu} - \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ i \searrow \\ \times \\ j \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \downarrow \\ i \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} \downarrow \\ i \end{array} \end{array} \bar{\nu} = t_{ij} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ i \\ \uparrow \\ j \\ \uparrow \\ i \end{array} \bar{\nu}. \quad (2.19)$$

4. When $i \neq j$ one has the mixed relations

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{crossing} \\ \bar{\nu} \\ i \quad j \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} | \quad | \\ i \quad j \\ \bar{\nu} \end{array}, \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{crossing} \\ \bar{\nu} \\ i \quad j \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} | \quad | \\ i \quad j \\ \bar{\nu} \end{array}. \quad (2.20)$$

5. Negative degree bubbles are zero. That is, for all $m \in \mathbb{Z}_+$ one has

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{bubble} \\ \bar{\nu} \\ m \end{array} = 0 \quad \text{if } m < \bar{\nu}_i - 1, \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{bubble} \\ \bar{\nu} \\ m \end{array} = 0 \quad \text{if } m < -\bar{\nu}_i - 1. \quad (2.21)$$

A dotted bubble of degree zero is just the scaled identity 2-morphism:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{bubble} \\ \bar{\nu} \\ \bullet \\ \bar{\nu}_i - 1 \end{array} = c_{i, \bar{\nu}} \text{Id}_{\mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}}} \quad \text{for } \bar{\nu}_i \geq 1, \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{bubble} \\ \bar{\nu} \\ \bullet \\ -\bar{\nu}_i - 1 \end{array} = c_{i, \bar{\nu}}^{-1} \text{Id}_{\mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}}} \quad \text{for } \bar{\nu}_i \leq -1.$$

6. It is convenient to introduce so called fake bubbles. These diagrams are dotted bubbles where the number of dots is negative, but the total degree of the dotted bubble taken with these negative dots is still positive.

- Degree zero fake bubbles are equal to the identity 2-morphisms

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{bubble} \\ \bar{\nu} \\ \bullet \\ \bar{\nu}_i - 1 \end{array} = c_{i, \bar{\nu}} \text{Id}_{\mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}}} \quad \text{if } \bar{\nu}_i \leq 0, \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{bubble} \\ \bar{\nu} \\ \bullet \\ -\bar{\nu}_i - 1 \end{array} = c_{i, \bar{\nu}}^{-1} \text{Id}_{\mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}}} \quad \text{if } \bar{\nu}_i \geq 0.$$

- Higher degree fake bubbles for $\bar{\nu}_i < 0$ are defined inductively as

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{bubble} \\ \bar{\nu} \\ \bullet \\ \bar{\nu}_i - 1 + j \end{array} = \begin{cases} -c_{i, \bar{\nu}} \sum_{\substack{a+b=j \\ b \geq 1}} \begin{array}{c} \text{bubble} \\ \bar{\nu} \\ \bullet \\ \bar{\nu}_i - 1 + a \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{bubble} \\ \bar{\nu} \\ \bullet \\ -\bar{\nu}_i - 1 + b \end{array} & \text{if } 0 \leq j < -\bar{\nu}_i + 1 \\ 0 & \text{if } j < 0. \end{cases} \quad (2.22)$$

- Higher degree fake bubbles for $\bar{\nu}_i > 0$ are defined inductively as

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{bubble} \\ \bar{\nu} \\ \bullet \\ -\bar{\nu}_i - 1 + j \end{array} = \begin{cases} -c_{i, \bar{\nu}}^{-1} \sum_{\substack{a+b=j \\ a \geq 1}} \begin{array}{c} \text{bubble} \\ \bar{\nu} \\ \bullet \\ \bar{\nu}_i - 1 + a \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{bubble} \\ \bar{\nu} \\ \bullet \\ -\bar{\nu}_i - 1 + b \end{array} & \text{if } 0 \leq j < \bar{\nu}_i + 1 \\ 0 & \text{if } j < 0. \end{cases} \quad (2.23)$$

These equations arise from the homogeneous terms in t of the Grassmannian equation

$$\left(\begin{array}{c} \text{bubble} \\ \text{bubble} \\ \vdots \\ \text{bubble} \\ \vdots \end{array} t + \dots + \begin{array}{c} \text{bubble} \\ \text{bubble} \\ \vdots \\ \text{bubble} \\ \vdots \end{array} t^q + \dots \right) \left(\begin{array}{c} \text{bubble} \\ \text{bubble} \\ \vdots \\ \text{bubble} \\ \vdots \end{array} t^p + \dots \right) = \text{Id}_{\mathbb{1}_{\bar{\nu}}}. \quad (2.24)$$

Using the Grassmannian relation, we can express clockwise bubbles in terms of fake and real counterclockwise bubbles. We will use the following notation in order to emphasize the degree of bubble:

$$\begin{array}{c} \bar{\nu} \\ \text{bubble} \\ \blacktriangle+r \end{array} := \begin{array}{c} \bar{\nu} \\ \text{bubble} \\ \bar{\nu}_i-1+r \end{array}, \quad \begin{array}{c} \bar{\nu} \\ \text{bubble} \\ \blacktriangle+r \end{array} := \begin{array}{c} \bar{\nu} \\ \text{bubble} \\ -\bar{\nu}_i-1+r \end{array}.$$

7. The following set of relations are sometimes called extended \mathfrak{sl}_2 relations:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{bubble} \\ \text{bubble} \\ \vdots \\ \text{bubble} \\ \vdots \end{array} \bar{\nu} = - \sum_{\substack{f_1+f_2 \\ =-1}} \begin{array}{c} \bullet \\ \uparrow f_1 \\ \text{bubble} \\ \bullet \\ \downarrow f_2 \end{array} \bar{\nu}, \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{bubble} \\ \text{bubble} \\ \vdots \\ \text{bubble} \\ \vdots \end{array} \bar{\nu} = \sum_{\substack{g_1+g_2 \\ =-1}} \begin{array}{c} \text{bubble} \\ \bullet \\ \downarrow g_2 \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \bullet \\ \uparrow g_1 \\ \text{bubble} \\ \bullet \\ \downarrow \end{array} \bar{\nu}, \quad (2.25)$$

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{bubble} \\ \text{bubble} \\ \vdots \\ \text{bubble} \\ \vdots \end{array} \bar{\nu} = - \begin{array}{c} \text{bubble} \\ \text{bubble} \\ \vdots \\ \text{bubble} \\ \vdots \end{array} \bar{\nu} + \sum_{\substack{f_1+f_2+f_3 \\ =-2}} \begin{array}{c} \text{bubble} \\ \bullet \\ \downarrow f_3 \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{bubble} \\ \bullet \\ \downarrow f_2 \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{bubble} \\ \bullet \\ \downarrow f_1 \end{array} \bar{\nu}, \quad (2.26)$$

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{bubble} \\ \text{bubble} \\ \vdots \\ \text{bubble} \\ \vdots \end{array} \bar{\nu} = - \begin{array}{c} \text{bubble} \\ \text{bubble} \\ \vdots \\ \text{bubble} \\ \vdots \end{array} \bar{\nu} + \sum_{\substack{g_1+g_2+g_3 \\ =-2}} \begin{array}{c} \text{bubble} \\ \bullet \\ \downarrow g_3 \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{bubble} \\ \bullet \\ \downarrow g_2 \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{bubble} \\ \bullet \\ \downarrow g_1 \end{array} \bar{\nu}. \quad (2.27)$$

We prove the following relation which we will need for our main result.

Proposition 2.3.2. *Let $k, l \geq 0$ be integers such that $k + l > 0$. We have*

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{bubble} \\ \bullet \\ \downarrow k \\ \text{bubble} \\ \bullet \\ \downarrow l \\ \text{bubble} \\ \bullet \\ \downarrow i \end{array} \bar{\nu} = \sum_{s=0}^{k-1} \begin{array}{c} \text{bubble} \\ \bullet \\ \downarrow k+l-1-s \\ \text{bubble} \\ \bullet \\ \downarrow s \\ \text{bubble} \\ \bullet \\ \downarrow i \end{array} \bar{\nu} - \sum_{s=0}^{l-1} \begin{array}{c} \text{bubble} \\ \bullet \\ \downarrow k+l-1-s \\ \text{bubble} \\ \bullet \\ \downarrow s \\ \text{bubble} \\ \bullet \\ \downarrow i \end{array} \bar{\nu} = \sum_{s=0}^{k-1} \begin{array}{c} \text{bubble} \\ \bullet \\ \downarrow k+l-1-s \\ \text{bubble} \\ \bullet \\ \downarrow s \\ \text{bubble} \\ \bullet \\ \downarrow i \end{array} \bar{\nu} - \sum_{s=0}^{l-1} \begin{array}{c} \text{bubble} \\ \bullet \\ \downarrow k+l-1-s \\ \text{bubble} \\ \bullet \\ \downarrow s \\ \text{bubble} \\ \bullet \\ \downarrow i \end{array} \bar{\nu}. \quad (2.28)$$

Proof. We apply the following two nilHecke relations for the proof of the statement:

$$\begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \bullet \\ \searrow \end{array} \bar{\nu} - \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \bullet \\ \nearrow \end{array} \bar{\nu} = \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \bullet \\ \searrow \end{array} \bar{\nu} - \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \bullet \\ \nearrow \end{array} \bar{\nu} = \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ i \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ i \end{array} \bar{\nu}, \quad \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \bullet \\ \searrow \end{array} \bar{\nu} = 0.$$

First assume $l = 0$. Then by sliding the k dots upwards through the crossing, we get

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \bullet \\ \searrow \end{array} \bar{\nu} &= \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \bullet \\ \searrow \end{array} \bar{\nu} + \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \bullet \\ \nearrow \end{array} \bar{\nu} = \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \bullet \\ \searrow \end{array} \bar{\nu} + \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \bullet \\ \nearrow \end{array} \bar{\nu} + \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \bullet \\ \searrow \end{array} \bar{\nu} = \dots \\ &= \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \bullet \\ \searrow \end{array} \bar{\nu} + \sum_{s=0}^{k-1} \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \bullet \\ \searrow \end{array} \bar{\nu} = \sum_{s=0}^{k-1} \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \bullet \\ \searrow \end{array} \bar{\nu}. \end{aligned} \quad (2.29)$$

We now let $l \geq 0$ and slide the l dots upwards:

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \bullet \\ \searrow \end{array} \bar{\nu} &= \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \bullet \\ \searrow \end{array} \bar{\nu} - \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \bullet \\ \nearrow \end{array} \bar{\nu} = \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \bullet \\ \searrow \end{array} \bar{\nu} - \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \bullet \\ \nearrow \end{array} \bar{\nu} - \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \bullet \\ \searrow \end{array} \bar{\nu} = \dots \\ &= \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \bullet \\ \searrow \end{array} \bar{\nu} - \sum_{s=0}^{l-1} \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \bullet \\ \searrow \end{array} \bar{\nu} \stackrel{(2.29)}{=} \sum_{s=0}^{k-1} \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \bullet \\ \searrow \end{array} \bar{\nu} - \sum_{s=0}^{l-1} \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \bullet \\ \searrow \end{array} \bar{\nu}. \end{aligned}$$

The proof of the second equality is entirely similar, we slide the dots downwards through the crossing. \square

Proposition 2.3.2 implies the following relation:

$$\begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \bullet \\ \searrow \end{array} \bar{\nu} = - \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \bullet \\ \nearrow \end{array} \bar{\nu}. \quad (2.30)$$

The relations between 2-morphisms can be used to obtain the following bubble slide equations:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{---} \\ | \\ \text{---} \\ j \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \bar{\nu} \\ \circlearrowleft \\ \blacktriangleright_{+r} \end{array} = \left\{ \begin{array}{ll} \sum_{f=0}^r (r+1-f) \begin{array}{c} \overline{\nu + \alpha_j} \\ \bullet_{r-f} \\ \circlearrowleft \\ \blacktriangleright_{+f} \\ | \\ \text{---} \\ j \end{array} & \text{if } a_{ij} = 2, \\ t_{ij} \begin{array}{c} \overline{\nu + \alpha_j} \\ \circlearrowleft \\ \blacktriangleright_{+r} \\ | \\ \text{---} \\ j \end{array} + t_{ji} \begin{array}{c} \overline{\nu + \alpha_j} \\ \bullet_{r-1} \\ \circlearrowleft \\ \blacktriangleright_{+r-1} \\ | \\ \text{---} \\ j \end{array} & \text{if } a_{ij} = -1, \\ t_{ij} \begin{array}{c} \overline{\nu + \alpha_j} \\ \circlearrowleft \\ \blacktriangleright_{+r} \\ | \\ \text{---} \\ j \end{array} & \text{if } a_{ij} = 0. \end{array} \right. \quad (2.31)$$

$$\begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \blacktriangleright_{+r} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} | \\ \text{---} \\ j \\ \bar{\nu} \end{array} = \left\{ \begin{array}{ll} \sum_{f=0}^r (r+1-f) \begin{array}{c} \bullet_{r-f} \\ | \\ \text{---} \\ j \\ \circlearrowleft \\ \blacktriangleright_{+f} \\ \bar{\nu} \end{array} & \text{if } a_{ij} = 2, \\ t_{ji} \begin{array}{c} \bullet \\ | \\ \text{---} \\ j \\ \circlearrowleft \\ \blacktriangleright_{+r-1} \\ \bar{\nu} \end{array} + t_{ij} \begin{array}{c} | \\ \text{---} \\ j \\ \circlearrowleft \\ \blacktriangleright_{+\alpha} \\ \bar{\nu} \end{array} & \text{if } a_{ij} = -1, \\ t_{ji} \begin{array}{c} | \\ \text{---} \\ j \\ \circlearrowleft \\ \blacktriangleright_{+r} \\ \bar{\nu} \end{array} & \text{if } a_{ij} = 0. \end{array} \right. \quad (2.32)$$

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{---} \\ | \\ \text{---} \\ j \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \bar{\nu} \\ \circlearrowleft \\ \blacktriangleright_{+r} \end{array} = \left\{ \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{c} \overline{\nu + \alpha_i} \\ \bullet_2 \\ \circlearrowleft \\ \blacktriangleright_{+(r-2)} \\ | \\ \text{---} \\ j \end{array} - 2 \begin{array}{c} \overline{\nu + \alpha_i} \\ \bullet \\ \circlearrowleft \\ \blacktriangleright_{+(r-1)} \\ | \\ \text{---} \\ j \end{array} + \begin{array}{c} \overline{\nu + \alpha_i} \\ \bullet \\ \circlearrowleft \\ \blacktriangleright_{+r} \\ | \\ \text{---} \\ j \end{array} & \text{if } a_{ij} = 2, \\ t_{ij}^{-1} \sum_{f=0}^{\alpha} (-t_{ij}^{-1} t_{ji})^f \begin{array}{c} \overline{\nu + \alpha_j} \\ \bullet_f \\ \circlearrowleft \\ \blacktriangleright_{+\alpha-f} \\ | \\ \text{---} \\ j \end{array} & \text{if } a_{ij} = -1, \end{array} \right. \quad (2.33)$$

$$\begin{array}{c} \overline{\nu + \alpha_j} \\ \circlearrowleft \\ \blacklozenge_{+r} \\ | \\ j \end{array} = \begin{cases} \begin{array}{c} \bullet^2 \quad \bar{\nu} \\ | \\ \circlearrowleft \\ \blacklozenge_{+(r-2)} \\ | \\ j \end{array} - 2 \begin{array}{c} \bullet \quad \bar{\nu} \\ | \\ \circlearrowleft \\ \blacklozenge_{+(r-1)} \\ | \\ j \end{array} + \begin{array}{c} \bullet \quad \bar{\nu} \\ | \\ \circlearrowleft \\ \blacklozenge_{+r} \\ | \\ j \end{array} & \text{if } a_{ij} = 2, \\ t_{ij}^{-1} \sum_{f=0}^r (-t_{ij}^{-1} t_{ji})^f \begin{array}{c} \bullet^f \quad \bar{\nu} \\ | \\ \circlearrowleft \\ \blacklozenge_{+(r-f)} \\ | \\ j \end{array} & \text{if } a_{ij} = -1. \end{cases} \quad (2.34)$$

Let $\dot{\mathcal{U}}_Q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$ be the Karoubi envelope of $\mathcal{U}_Q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$, the smallest 2-category which contains $\mathcal{U}_Q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$ and has splitting idempotents. The diagrammatic description of $\dot{\mathcal{U}}_Q(\mathfrak{sl}_2)$ is given in [36], but has not been worked out yet in full generality for any n . The split Grothendieck group $K_0(\dot{\mathcal{U}}_Q(\mathfrak{sl}_n))$ is the additive category with objects $\bar{\nu} \in X$, and the abelian group of morphisms $\bar{\nu} \rightarrow \bar{\mu}$, $\bar{\mu} \in X$ is the split Grothendieck group $K_0(\dot{\mathcal{U}}_Q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)(\bar{\nu}, \bar{\mu}))$ of the additive category $\dot{\mathcal{U}}_Q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)(\bar{\nu}, \bar{\mu})$. We can view $K_0(\dot{\mathcal{U}}_Q(\mathfrak{sl}_n))$ as a $\mathcal{A} = \mathbb{Z}[q, q^{-1}]$ module, since the degree shift functor on $\dot{\mathcal{U}}_Q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$ induces a multiplication by q in $K_0(\dot{\mathcal{U}}_Q(\mathfrak{sl}_n))$. The following theorem is the categorification of quantum \mathfrak{sl}_n by Khovanov and Lauda.

Theorem 2.3.3. [39] *There is \mathcal{A} -module isomorphism*

$$\gamma : {}_{\mathcal{A}}\dot{\mathbf{U}}_q(\mathfrak{sl}_n) \rightarrow K_0(\dot{\mathcal{U}}_Q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)), \quad (2.35)$$

such that $\gamma(1_{\bar{\nu}}) = [\mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}}]_{\cong}$, $\gamma(E_i 1_{\bar{\nu}}) = [\mathcal{E}_i \mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}}]_{\cong}$, and $\gamma(F_i 1_{\bar{\nu}}) = [\mathcal{F}_i \mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}}]_{\cong}$.

We define $\mathcal{U} = \mathcal{U}_Q^*(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$ to be the 2-category with the same objects and 1-morphisms as $\mathcal{U}_Q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$ and with 2-morphisms

$$\mathcal{U}(\bar{\nu}, \bar{\mu})(f, g) = \bigoplus_{t \in \mathbb{Z}} \mathcal{U}_Q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)(\bar{\nu}, \bar{\mu})(f, g\langle t \rangle)$$

for all $\bar{\nu}, \bar{\mu} \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{U})$ and $f, g: \bar{\nu} \rightarrow \bar{\mu}$. Horizontal composition in \mathcal{U} is induced from the horizontal composition in $\mathcal{U}_Q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$. We will work mainly with the 2-category \mathcal{U} from now on. K_0 decategorification of \mathcal{U} is the same as that of $\mathcal{U}_Q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$, however, it has more interesting trace decategorification as we will see next.

2.4 The current algebra and the trace of \mathcal{U}

Here we will compute the trace of the 2-category \mathcal{U} and compare it to the split Grothendieck group. Let E_i, F_i, H_i , $i \in I$ be the Chevalley generators of \mathfrak{sl}_n . By $\mathfrak{sl}_n[t] = \mathfrak{sl}_n \otimes \mathbb{k}[t]$, we denote the extension of \mathfrak{sl}_n by polynomials in t . Then $\mathfrak{sl}_n[t]$ is a Lie algebra with the Lie bracket is defined as $[a \otimes t^r, b \otimes t^s] = [a, b] \otimes t^{r+s}$, for $a, b \in \mathfrak{sl}_n$ and $r, s \geq 0$. We call $\mathbf{U}(\mathfrak{sl}_n[t])$ the current algebra. Current algebra is graded with $\deg(a \otimes t^k) = 2k$. This

algebra is generated over \mathbb{k} by $E_{i,r} = E_i \otimes t^r, F_{i,r} = F_i \otimes t^r, H_{i,r} = H_i \otimes t^r$ for $r \geq 0$ and $i \in I$ modulo the following relations:

C1 For $i, j \in I$ and $r, s \geq 0$

$$[H_{i,r}, H_{j,s}] = 0,$$

C2 For any $i, j \in I$ and $r, s \geq 0$,

$$[H_{i,r}, E_{j,s}] = a_{ij} E_{j,r+s}, \quad [H_{i,r}, F_{j,s}] = -a_{ij} F_{j,r+s},$$

C3 For any $i, j \in I$ and $r, s \geq 0$,

$$[E_{i,r+1}, E_{j,s}] = [E_{i,r}, E_{j,s+1}], \quad [F_{i,r+1}, F_{j,s}] = [F_{i,r}, F_{j,s+1}],$$

C4 For any $i, j \in I$ and $r, s \geq 0$

$$[E_{i,r}, F_{j,s}] = \delta_{i,j} H_{i,r+s},$$

C5 Let $i \neq j$ and set $m = 1 - a_{ij}$. For every $r_1, \dots, r_m, s \geq 0$

$$\sum_{\pi \in S_m} \sum_{l=0}^m (-1)^l \binom{m}{l} E_{i,k_{\pi(1)}} \cdots E_{i,k_{\pi(l)}} E_{j,s} E_{i,k_{\pi(l+1)}} \cdots E_{i,k_{\pi(m)}} = 0,$$

$$\sum_{\pi \in S_m} \sum_{l=0}^m (-1)^l \binom{m}{l} F_{i,k_{\pi(1)}} \cdots F_{i,k_{\pi(l)}} F_{j,s} F_{i,k_{\pi(l+1)}} \cdots F_{i,k_{\pi(m)}} = 0.$$

We identify $\mathbf{U}(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$ as a subalgebra of $\mathbf{U}(\mathfrak{sl}_n[t])$ generated by degree zero elements $E_{i,0}, F_{i,0}, H_{i,0}, i \in I$. Let $\dot{\mathbf{U}}(\mathfrak{sl}_n[t])$ be the idempotent version of the current algebra $\mathbf{U}(\mathfrak{sl}_n[t])$, where the unit is replaced by the collection of mutually orthogonal idempotents $1_{\bar{\nu}}$ for each \mathfrak{sl}_n -weight $\bar{\nu}$, such that

$$1_{\bar{\nu}} 1_{\bar{\nu}'} = \delta_{\bar{\nu}, \bar{\nu}'} 1_{\bar{\nu}}, \quad 1_{\bar{\nu}} H_{i,0} = H_{i,0} 1_{\bar{\nu}} = \bar{\nu}_i 1_{\bar{\nu}}, \quad 1_{\bar{\nu} + \alpha_i} E_{i,j} = E_{i,j} 1_{\bar{\nu}}, \quad 1_{\bar{\nu} - \alpha_i} F_{i,j} = F_{i,j} 1_{\bar{\nu}}.$$

Now we describe the trace $\text{Tr}\mathcal{U}$ of the 2-category \mathcal{U} . The trace class of a 2-morphisms in \mathcal{U} can be depicted by closing a 2-morphism diagrams to the right:

$$\left[\begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \bullet \\ \searrow \\ i \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \bar{\nu} \\ \searrow \\ i \end{array} \right] = \text{Diagram of a closed loop with a blue circle and a dot on the left side.}$$

Proposition 2.4.1. *The following relation holds in $\text{Tr}\mathcal{U}$:*

$$\text{Diagram 1} = - \text{Diagram 2} \tag{2.36}$$

Proof. By putting $k = 1, l = 0$ in the Proposition 2.3.2, we get

$$\text{Diagram 3} = \text{Diagram 4} \tag{2.37}$$

Then we have

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Diagram 5} &= \text{Diagram 6} = \text{Diagram 7} \stackrel{(2.30)}{=} - \text{Diagram 8} \\ &= - \text{Diagram 9} = - \text{Diagram 10} \end{aligned} \tag{2.38}$$

Hence, the statement indeed holds. \square

Let $E_{i,r}1_{\bar{\nu}}, F_{j,r}1_{\bar{\nu}}, H_{i,r}1_{\bar{\nu}}$ denote the following trace classes:

$$E_{i,r}1_{\bar{\nu}} = \left[\begin{array}{c} \bullet^r \\ | \\ \uparrow \\ i \end{array} \bar{\nu} \right], \quad F_{j,r}1_{\bar{\nu}} = \left[\begin{array}{c} \bullet^r \\ | \\ \downarrow \\ j \end{array} \bar{\nu} \right], \quad H_{i,r}1_{\bar{\nu}} = [\pi_{i,r}(\bar{\nu}) \text{Id}_{1_{\bar{\nu}}}],$$

where

$$\pi_{i,r}(\bar{\nu}) = \sum_{l=0}^r (l+1) \begin{array}{c} \bar{\nu} \\ \circlearrowleft \\ \bullet^i \\ \spadesuit^{+l} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \bar{\nu} \\ \circlearrowleft \\ \bullet^i \\ \spadesuit^{+r-l} \end{array}$$

for $r > 0$ and $\pi_{i,0}(\bar{\nu}) = \bar{\nu}_i$.

Theorem 2.4.2. *There is an algebra homomorphism*

$$\rho: \dot{\mathbf{U}}(\mathfrak{sl}_n[t]) \longrightarrow \text{Tr } \mathcal{U}, \quad (2.39)$$

given by

$$E_{i,r}1_{\bar{\nu}} \mapsto E_{i,r}1_{\bar{\nu}}, \quad F_{i,r}1_{\bar{\nu}} \mapsto F_{i,r}1_{\bar{\nu}}, \quad H_{i,r}1_{\bar{\nu}} \mapsto H_{i,r}1_{\bar{\nu}}.$$

The proof of Theorem 2.4.2 is given in the next subsection.

Let $Z(\bar{\nu})$, the center of an object $\bar{\nu} \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{U})$, to be the endomorphism ring $\text{End}(1_{\bar{\nu}})$. The ring $Z(\bar{\nu})$ is a commutative ring, diagrammatically given by closed diagrams label by $\bar{\nu}$ on the outside of the diagram. By [35], $Z(\bar{\nu})$ is freely generated by counterclockwise oriented fake and real bubbles. We will define the center of objects $Z(\mathcal{U})$ of \mathcal{U} as

$$Z(\mathcal{U}) = \bigoplus_{\bar{\nu} \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{U})} Z(\bar{\nu}).$$

Cyclicity relations show that \mathcal{U} is cyclic as a 2-category. Hence, we can define an action of $\text{Tr } \mathcal{U}$ on the center of objects $Z(\mathcal{U})$, and thus an action of the current algebra.

Corollary 2.4.3. *The vector space $Z(\mathcal{U})$ is a $\mathbf{U}(\mathfrak{sl}_n[t])$ -module with*

$$E_{i,j}: Z(\bar{\nu}) \rightarrow Z(\overline{\bar{\nu} + \alpha_i}), \quad * \xrightarrow{\bar{\nu}} \begin{array}{c} \bar{\nu} \\ \circlearrowleft \\ * \\ \bullet^j \\ \spadesuit^i \end{array} \xrightarrow{\overline{\bar{\nu} + \alpha_i}}, \quad (2.40)$$

$$F_{i,j}: Z(\bar{\nu}) \rightarrow Z(\overline{\nu - \alpha_i}), \quad * \quad \bar{\nu} \mapsto \begin{array}{c} \overline{\nu - \alpha_i} \\ \circlearrowleft \\ \begin{array}{c} \bar{\nu} \\ * \\ j \quad i \end{array} \end{array}, \quad (2.41)$$

$$H_{i,j}: Z(\bar{\nu}) \rightarrow Z(\bar{\nu}), \quad * \quad \bar{\nu} \mapsto \pi_{i,j}(\bar{\nu}) * \bar{\nu}. \quad (2.42)$$

Proof. This theorem follows immediately from Theorem 2.4.2. In particular, the fact that the current algebra relations hold in the trace $\text{Tr}\mathcal{U}$ imply that these relations hold under the action described above. \square

Notice that the maps $F_{i,j}$ and $E_{i,j}$ send an element of degree d to an element of degree $d + 2(j + \bar{\nu}_i - 1)$ and $d + 2(j - \bar{\nu}_i - 1)$, respectively. In order to see this for $F_{i,0}$, let $*$ be the empty diagram and $j = 0$. Then $F_{i,0}$ sends it to a counterclockwise bubble of degree $2(\bar{\nu}_i - 1)$:

$$* \quad \bar{\nu} \xrightarrow{F_{i,0}} \begin{array}{c} \overline{\nu - \alpha_i} \\ \circlearrowleft \\ \bar{\nu} \\ i \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \overline{\nu - \alpha_i} \\ \circlearrowleft \\ \begin{array}{c} i \\ \bullet \\ -(\nu - \alpha_i)_{i-1} + \bar{\nu}_i - 1 \end{array} \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \overline{\nu - \alpha_i} \\ \circlearrowleft \\ \begin{array}{c} i \\ \bullet \\ \blacktriangle + \bar{\nu}_i - 1 \end{array} \end{array}, \quad (2.43)$$

where we use the identity $(\overline{\nu - \alpha_i})_i = \bar{\nu}_i - 2$.

Theorem 2.4.2 was later improved in the following theorem by A. Beliakova, K. Habiro, A. Lauda, B. Webster in [5], Theorem 8.3.

Theorem 2.4.4. *The homomorphism $\rho: \dot{\mathcal{U}}(\mathfrak{sl}_n[t]) \rightarrow \text{Tr}\mathcal{U}$ is an isomorphism.*

2.5 Proof of the homomorphism theorem

Here we give the proof of the Theorem 2.4.2 using diagrammatic algebra of 2-morphism.

Proof. To prove this theorem, we verify the current algebra relations using the relations in the 2-category \mathcal{U} . We only need to consider the case $i \neq j$, since the \mathfrak{sl}_2 case has been proven in [7]. **C1** is clear, since multiplication by a bubble is a commutative operation. We prove the equality **C2** for the case $j = i \pm 1$. For convenience, we will only depict the interior of the annulus for diagrams on the annulus in our calculation below, where $v_{ij} := t_{ij}^{-1}t_{ji}$.

$$\begin{aligned}
H_{i,r} E_{j,s} 1_{\bar{\nu}} &= \sum_{k=0}^r k \left(\begin{array}{c} i \\ \spadesuit+k \end{array} \begin{array}{c} i \\ \spadesuit+r-k \end{array} \begin{array}{c} j \\ \bar{\nu} \\ \circlearrowleft \\ s \end{array} \right) \stackrel{(2.32)}{=} \\
&= t_{ij} \sum_{k=0}^r k \left(\begin{array}{c} i \\ \spadesuit+r-k \end{array} \begin{array}{c} i \\ \spadesuit+k \end{array} \begin{array}{c} j \\ \bar{\nu} \\ \circlearrowleft \\ s \end{array} \right) + t_{ji} \sum_{k=0}^r k \left(\begin{array}{c} i \\ \spadesuit+r-k \end{array} \begin{array}{c} i \\ \spadesuit+k-1 \end{array} \begin{array}{c} j \\ \bar{\nu} \\ \circlearrowleft \\ s+1 \end{array} \right) \stackrel{(2.34)}{=} \\
&= \sum_{k=0}^r \sum_{l=0}^{r-k} k (-v_{ij})^l \left(\begin{array}{c} i \\ \spadesuit+k \end{array} \begin{array}{c} i \\ \spadesuit+r-k-l \end{array} \begin{array}{c} j \\ \bar{\nu} \\ \circlearrowleft \\ l+s \end{array} \right) + v_{ij} \sum_{k=0}^r \sum_{l=0}^{r-k} k (-v_{ij})^l \left(\begin{array}{c} i \\ \spadesuit+k-1 \end{array} \begin{array}{c} i \\ \spadesuit+r-k-l \end{array} \begin{array}{c} j \\ \bar{\nu} \\ \circlearrowleft \\ l+s+1 \end{array} \right) = \\
&= \sum_{l=0}^r \sum_{k=0}^{r-l} k (-v_{ij})^l \left(\begin{array}{c} i \\ \spadesuit+k \end{array} \begin{array}{c} i \\ \spadesuit+r-k-l \end{array} \begin{array}{c} j \\ \bar{\nu} \\ \circlearrowleft \\ l+s \end{array} \right) + v_{ij} \sum_{l=0}^r \sum_{k=0}^{r-l-1} (k+1) (-v_{ij})^l \left(\begin{array}{c} i \\ \spadesuit+k \end{array} \begin{array}{c} i \\ \spadesuit+r-k-l-1 \end{array} \begin{array}{c} j \\ \bar{\nu} \\ \circlearrowleft \\ l+s+1 \end{array} \right) = \\
&= \sum_{l=0}^r (-v_{ij})^l \left(\begin{array}{c} i \\ \spadesuit+k \end{array} \begin{array}{c} i \\ \spadesuit+r-k-l \end{array} \begin{array}{c} j \\ \bar{\nu} \\ \circlearrowleft \\ l+s \end{array} \right) - \sum_{l=1}^{r+1} \sum_{k=0}^{r-l} (k+1) (-v_{ij})^l \left(\begin{array}{c} i \\ \spadesuit+k \end{array} \begin{array}{c} i \\ \spadesuit+r-k-l \end{array} \begin{array}{c} j \\ \bar{\nu} \\ \circlearrowleft \\ l+s \end{array} \right)
\end{aligned}$$

Pulling off k of the summands in the second term and observing that the $l = r + 1$ term vanishes, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \sum_{l=0}^r (-v_{ij})^l \left(\text{circle } j \text{ with } \bar{\nu} \text{ and } l+s \text{ dots} \right) - \sum_{l=1}^r (-v_{ij})^l \left(\text{circle } j \text{ with } \bar{\nu} \text{ and } l+s \text{ dots} \right) - \sum_{l=1}^r \sum_{k=0}^{r-l} (-v_{ij})^l \left(\text{circle } j \text{ with } \bar{\nu} \text{ and } l+s \text{ dots, and two inner circles } i \text{ with } k \text{ and } r-k-l \text{ dots} \right) \\
&= \left(\text{circle } j \text{ with } \bar{\nu} \text{ and } s \text{ dots} \right) - \sum_{l=1}^r (-v_{ij})^l \left(\text{circle } j \text{ with } \bar{\nu} \text{ and } l+s \text{ dots} \right) = \left(\text{circle } j \text{ with } \bar{\nu} \text{ and } s \text{ dots} \right) - (-v_{ij})^r \left(\text{circle } j \text{ with } \bar{\nu} \text{ and } r+s \text{ dots} \right) = \\
&= E_{j,s} H_{i,r} 1_{\bar{\nu}} - (-v_{ij})^r E_{j,r+s} 1_{\bar{\nu}}.
\end{aligned}$$

By choosing $v_{ij} = -1$, we get

$$[H_{i,r}, E_{j,s}] 1_{\bar{\nu}} = -E_{j,r+s} 1_{\bar{\nu}}.$$

The relation

$$[H_{i,r}, F_{j,s}] 1_{\bar{\nu}} = F_{j,r+s} 1_{\bar{\nu}}.$$

can be proven in a similar way. **C3** follows from the relations (2.15) and (2.17):

$$\begin{aligned}
&t_{ij} \left(\text{circle } i \text{ with } \bar{\nu} \text{ and } r+1 \text{ dots, and inner circle } j \text{ with } s \text{ dots} \right) + t_{ji} \left(\text{circle } i \text{ with } \bar{\nu} \text{ and } r \text{ dots, and inner circle } j \text{ with } s+1 \text{ dots} \right) \\
&\stackrel{(2.15)}{=} \left(\text{circle } i \text{ with } \bar{\nu} \text{ and } r \text{ dots, and inner circle } j \text{ with } s \text{ dots} \right) \\
&\stackrel{(2.17)}{=} \left(\text{circle } i \text{ with } \bar{\nu} \text{ and } r+1 \text{ dots, and inner circle } j \text{ with } s+1 \text{ dots} \right) \\
&\stackrel{(2.15)}{=} \left(\text{circle } i \text{ with } \bar{\nu} \text{ and } r+1 \text{ dots, and inner circle } j \text{ with } s \text{ dots} \right)
\end{aligned}$$

$$= t_{ji} \begin{array}{c} \text{---} j \\ \text{---} i \\ \text{---} \bar{\nu} \\ \text{---} r \\ \text{---} s+1 \end{array} + t_{ij} \begin{array}{c} \text{---} j \\ \text{---} i \\ \text{---} \bar{\nu} \\ \text{---} r+1 \\ \text{---} s \end{array}.$$

Dividing both sides of this equation by t_{ij} , and by choosing $v_{ij} = -1$, we get

$$[\mathbf{E}_{i,r+1}, \mathbf{E}_{j,s}]1_{\bar{\nu}} = [\mathbf{E}_{i,r}, \mathbf{E}_{j,s+1}]1_{\bar{\nu}}.$$

If we reverse the arrows in the preceding equation, they still hold:

$$[\mathbf{F}_{i,r+1}, \mathbf{F}_{j,s}]1_{\bar{\nu}} = [\mathbf{F}_{i,r}, \mathbf{F}_{j,s+1}]1_{\bar{\nu}}.$$

The relation **C4** for the case $i \neq j$ can be checked the following way:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{E}_{i,r} \mathbf{F}_{j,s} 1_{\bar{\nu}} &= \begin{array}{c} \text{---} i \\ \text{---} j \\ \text{---} \bar{\nu} \\ \text{---} s \\ \text{---} r \end{array} \stackrel{(2.20)}{=} \begin{array}{c} \text{---} i \\ \text{---} j \\ \text{---} \bar{\nu} \\ \text{---} j \\ \text{---} i \\ \text{---} r \\ \text{---} s \end{array} \stackrel{(2.17)}{=} \\ &= \begin{array}{c} \text{---} i \\ \text{---} j \\ \text{---} \bar{\nu} \\ \text{---} i \\ \text{---} j \\ \text{---} r \\ \text{---} s \end{array} \stackrel{(2.20)}{=} \begin{array}{c} \text{---} j \\ \text{---} i \\ \text{---} \bar{\nu} \\ \text{---} r \\ \text{---} s \end{array} = \mathbf{F}_{j,s} \mathbf{E}_{i,r} 1_{\bar{\nu}}. \end{aligned}$$

We now prove the Serre relation **C5** in the case when $|i - j| = 1$. Let us prove the identity

$$\mathbf{E}_{i,r} \mathbf{E}_{j,s} \mathbf{E}_{i,p} 1_{\bar{\nu}} + \mathbf{E}_{i,p} \mathbf{E}_{j,s} \mathbf{E}_{i,r} 1_{\bar{\nu}} = \mathbf{E}_{i,r} \mathbf{E}_{i,p} \mathbf{E}_{j,s} 1_{\bar{\nu}} + \mathbf{E}_{j,s} \mathbf{E}_{i,r} \mathbf{E}_{i,p} 1_{\bar{\nu}}.$$

We have

$$E_{i,r}E_{j,s}E_{i,p}1_{\bar{\nu}} = \text{Diagram} \stackrel{(2.19)}{=} \text{Diagram} \quad (2.44)$$

$$= t_{ij}^{-1} \text{Diagram} - t_{ij}^{-1} \text{Diagram} .$$

The first term on the right hand side of (2.44) can be simplified

$$t_{ij}^{-1} \text{Diagram} = t_{ij}^{-1} \text{Diagram} \quad (2.45)$$

using the biadjoint relations and equations (2.13) and (2.14) to slide crossings around the annulus. This diagram can be further simplified using the relation (2.15):

$$\stackrel{(2.15)}{=} v_{ji} \left(\text{Diagram 1} \right) + \left(\text{Diagram 2} \right), \tag{2.46}$$

where we freely slide dots through caps and cups using the dot cyclicity relation (2.11). The second term on the right-hand-side of (2.44) can also be simplified

$$t_{ij}^{-1} \left(\text{Diagram 3} \right) \stackrel{(2.12),(2.17)}{=} t_{ij}^{-1} \left(\text{Diagram 4} \right) = \stackrel{(2.15)}{=} v_{ij} \left(\text{Diagram 5} \right) + \left(\text{Diagram 6} \right).$$

By combining terms and simplifying, we get

Equation (2.47) shows a decomposition of a nested loop diagram. The left side is a diagram with three concentric loops labeled i , j , and i from outer to inner. A blue circle labeled $\bar{\nu}$ is in the center. Points r , s , and p are marked on the loops. The right side consists of four terms:

- Term 1: v_{ij} times a diagram with points $s+1$, r , p and labels j , i , i .
- Term 2: $+$ times a diagram with points s , $r+1$, p and labels j , i , i .
- Term 3: $-v_{ij}$ times a diagram with points $s+1$, p , r and labels i , j , j .
- Term 4: $-$ times a diagram with points s , $p+1$, r and labels i , j , j .

By interchanging r and p in the equation (2.47), we get

Equation (2.48) shows a decomposition of a nested loop diagram similar to (2.47), but with points p , s , and r marked. The right side consists of four terms:

- Term 1: v_{ij} times a diagram with points $s+1$, p , r and labels j , i , i .
- Term 2: $+$ times a diagram with points s , $p+1$, r and labels j , i , i .
- Term 3: $-v_{ij}$ times a diagram with points $s+1$, r , p and labels i , j , j .
- Term 4: $-$ times a diagram with points s , $r+1$, p and labels i , j , j .

The following equation directly follows from (2.16) and Proposition 2.4.1:

$$\text{Diagram} = \text{Diagram}_1 + \text{Diagram}_2 \quad (2.49)$$

We add the right and left hand sides of the equations (2.47) and (2.48), and after eliminating terms using (2.36), we get

$$\text{Diagram}_1 + \text{Diagram}_2 = \text{Diagram}_3 - \text{Diagram}_4 + \text{Diagram}_5 - \text{Diagram}_6 \quad (2.50)$$

Combining the respective terms using the relation (2.49) in the equation (2.50), we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 1} \\ \text{Diagram 2} \end{array} + \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 3} \\ \text{Diagram 4} \end{array} = \quad (2.51) \\
 & = \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 5} \\ \text{Diagram 6} \end{array} + \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 7} \\ \text{Diagram 8} \end{array} = E_{j,s} E_{i,r} E_{i,p} 1_{\bar{\nu}} + E_{i,r} E_{i,p} E_{j,s} 1_{\bar{\nu}}.
 \end{aligned}$$

By reversing the orientation of the arrows, we get the identity

$$F_{i,r} F_{j,s} F_{i,p} 1_{\bar{\nu}} + F_{i,p} F_{j,s} F_{i,r} 1_{\bar{\nu}} = F_{i,r} F_{i,p} F_{j,s} 1_{\bar{\nu}} + F_{j,s} F_{i,r} F_{i,p} 1_{\bar{\nu}}.$$

The case $|i - j| > 1$ is very easy to prove since all i and j labeled terms commute. \square

2.6 Horizontal trace of \mathcal{U}

The trace of a 2-endomorphism in \mathcal{U} is obtained by closing the matching loose ends of the strands to the right on a plane. Alternatively, it can be described by closing it around a cylinder in the space, for example,

$$\left[\begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 9} \\ \text{Diagram 10} \end{array} \right] = \text{Diagram 11} \quad (2.52)$$

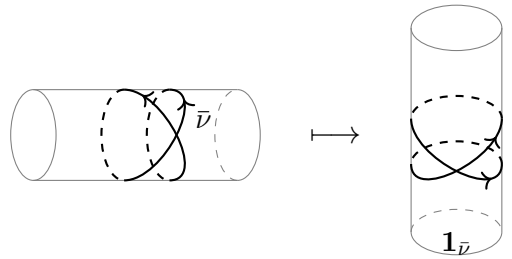
We defined the horizontal trace of a linear 2-category in a general setting. The horizontal trace of \mathcal{U} is a linear category with object set of 1-endomorphisms of \mathcal{U} and hom-sets are 2-morphisms of \mathcal{U} drawn on a cylinder in the horizontal direction. For example, the

following is a morphism in $\mathrm{Tr}^h \mathcal{U}$:



(2.53)

Sometimes the usual trace is called the *vertical trace*. Recall that the vertical trace can be embedded into the horizontal trace in a canonical way. This embedding sends an object in $\mathrm{Tr} \mathcal{U}$ to the identity 1-morphism of that object. There is a nice diagrammatic description of an injection $\mathrm{Tr} \mathcal{U} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Tr}^h \mathcal{U}$ on the morphisms. It is given by turning cylinders by 90 degrees to the right:



Chapter II

Trace and 2-representations

In this chapter, 2-representations of categorified quantum \mathfrak{sl}_n and their traces will be discussed. The main object of study is the 2-category of bimodules over cohomology of flag varieties and construction of current algebra modules. We also mention Rouquier's universal categorification, projective module category of KLR algebras and category of foams. We start by defining local Weyl modules and their duals, which will play a central role for the main results in the following sections.

3 Local Weyl modules of current algebra

3.1 Local Weyl modules

Let X be the integral \mathfrak{sl}_n weight lattice and $\bar{\lambda} \in X$ be a dominant integral weight. There is a partial order on X , defined as $\bar{\lambda} \geq \bar{\nu}$ if $\bar{\lambda} - \bar{\nu}$ is a positive linear combination of simple roots. A \mathfrak{sl}_n -module is called a *weight module* if it is a direct sum of its weight spaces, and an *integrable module* if E_i and F_i act nilpotently for all $i \in I$.

We define $V(\bar{\lambda})$ to be the $\mathbf{U}(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$ -module generated by a vector $v_{\bar{\lambda}}$ over $\mathbf{U}(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$, subject to the following relations for all $i \in I$:

$$E_i v_{\bar{\lambda}} = F_i^{\bar{\lambda}_i + 1} v_{\bar{\lambda}} = 0, \quad H_i v_{\bar{\lambda}} = \bar{\lambda}_i v_{\bar{\lambda}}.$$

$V(\bar{\lambda})$ is the unique, up to isomorphism, finite-dimensional irreducible $\mathbf{U}(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$ -module with the highest weight $\bar{\lambda}$. We can also view $V(\bar{\lambda})$ as a $\mathbf{U}(\mathfrak{sl}_n[t])$ -module, where the action of positive degree elements of $\mathbf{U}(\mathfrak{sl}_n[t])$ are trivial. Let $\mathbb{Z}[X]$ be the integral group ring

spanned by elements $e(\bar{\nu})$, $\bar{\nu} \in X$. We call the element

$$\text{ch } V(\bar{\lambda}) = \sum_{\bar{\lambda} \geq \bar{\nu}} \dim_{\mathbb{C}} V_{\bar{\nu}}(\bar{\lambda}) e(\bar{\nu})$$

in $\mathbb{Z}[X]$ the *character* of $V(\bar{\lambda})$, where $V_{\bar{\nu}}(\bar{\lambda}) = \{v \in V(\bar{\lambda}) \mid H_i v = \bar{\nu}_i v\}$.

In this section we give a short introduction to $\mathbf{U}(\mathfrak{sl}_n[t])$ -modules, called local Weyl modules. The simple \mathfrak{sl}_n -modules $V(\bar{\lambda})$ are sometimes also called Weyl modules. In this work, however, we apply the term only to the following current algebra modules.

Definition 3.1.1. *The local Weyl module $W(\bar{\lambda})$ is the $\mathbf{U}(\mathfrak{sl}_n[t])$ -module generated by the element $v_{\bar{\lambda}}$ over $\mathbf{U}(\mathfrak{sl}_n[t])$ together with the following relations for all $i \in I$ and $j \geq 0$:*

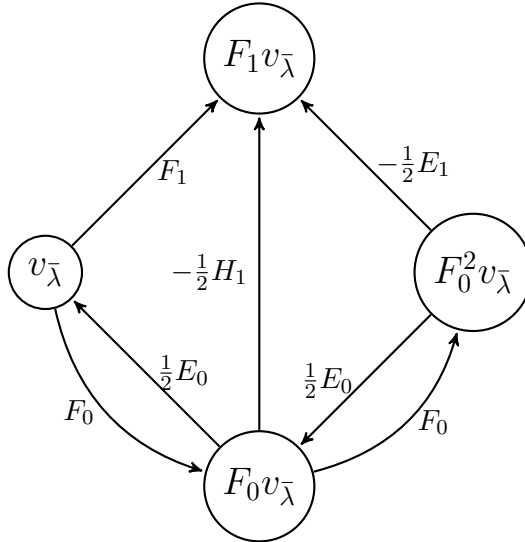
$$E_{i,j} v_{\bar{\lambda}} = F_{i,0}^{\bar{\lambda}_i+1} v_{\bar{\lambda}} = 0, \quad H_{i,0} v_{\bar{\lambda}} = \delta_{j,0} \bar{\lambda}_i v_{\bar{\lambda}}. \quad (3.1)$$

$W(\bar{\lambda})$ is a weight module, that is, it decomposes into a direct sum of weight spaces:

$$W(\bar{\lambda}) = \bigoplus_{\bar{\lambda} \geq \bar{\nu}} W_{\bar{\nu}}(\bar{\lambda}), \quad (3.2)$$

where $W_{\bar{\nu}}(\bar{\lambda}) = \{v \in W(\bar{\lambda}) \mid H_{i,0} v = \bar{\nu}_i v\}$.

In the simplest case $n = 2$ and $\bar{\lambda} = 2\omega_1$, the local Weyl module and the current algebra action can be illustrated by the following graph. The upward oriented edge describes the action of $H_1 := H_{1,1}$, the left and right oriented edges shows the actions of $E_j := E_{1,j}$ and $F_j := F_{1,j}$, respectively.



As a module generated by a single element $v_{\bar{\lambda}}$ over a graded algebra, $W(\bar{\lambda})$ inherits the degree from the current algebra, where we set the degree of $v_{\bar{\lambda}}$ to zero. Since the degree of t -parameter of the current algebra is 2, we can write $W(\bar{\lambda})$ as

$$W(\bar{\lambda}) = \bigoplus_{r \geq 0} W(\bar{\lambda})\{2r\},$$

where each homogeneous $2r$ -graded piece $W(\bar{\lambda})\{2r\} = \{v \in W(\bar{\lambda}), \deg(v) = 2r\}$ is a \mathfrak{sl}_n -module. Then the character of a local Weyl module $W(\bar{\lambda})$ is

$$\text{ch}_t W(\bar{\lambda}) = \sum_{r \geq 0} \text{ch} W(\bar{\lambda})\{2r\} t^r. \quad (3.3)$$

The local Weyl modules have the following universal property.

Theorem 3.1.2. [25] *Any finite-dimensional current algebra module generated by an element $v_{\bar{\lambda}}$ satisfying the relations (3.1) is a quotient of the local Weyl module $W(\bar{\lambda})$.*

3.2 Duals of local Weyl modules

Let $\mathcal{P}(n, N)$ be the set of n -compositions of N . We define a partial order, called the *dominance order*, on $\mathcal{P}(n, N)$ by setting $\mu \geq \nu$ for $\nu, \mu \in \mathcal{P}(n, N)$ if $\mu - \nu$ is a positive linear composition of simple roots.

For any compositions $\nu, \mu \in \mathcal{P}(n, N)$ define the integer

$$d_{\nu}^{\mu} = \max\{(\mu, \mu) - (\nu, \nu), 0\}. \quad (3.4)$$

Notice that d_{ν}^{μ} is an even non-negative integer, and it depends on $\bar{\mu}$ and $\bar{\nu}$ rather than μ and ν . To see this, take the partition $\mu' = \mu + (m, m, \dots, m) \in \mathcal{P} + (n, N + nm)$ and $\nu' = \nu + (m, m, \dots, m) \in \mathcal{P} + (n, N + nm)$ for any $m \in \mathbb{Z}_+$. Then we have $d_{\nu'}^{\mu'} = d_{\nu}^{\mu}$.

We now define the duals of $V(\bar{\lambda})$ and $W(\bar{\lambda})$ as follows. Let $V_{\bar{\nu}}^*(\bar{\lambda})$ be the dual vector space of the weight space $V_{\bar{\nu}}(\bar{\lambda})$. Namely, for each $w \in V_{\bar{\nu}}(\bar{\lambda})$, $V_{\bar{\nu}}^*(\bar{\lambda})$ is spanned by linear maps $\delta_w: V_{\bar{\nu}}(\bar{\lambda}) \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ such that $\delta_w(v)$ equals the Kronecker delta function $\delta_{w,v}$.

The dual of $V(\bar{\lambda})$ is the $\mathbf{U}(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$ -module

$$V^*(\bar{\lambda}) = \bigoplus_{\bar{\lambda} \geq \bar{\nu}} V_{\bar{\nu}}^*(\bar{\lambda})$$

in which the action is defined as

$$(x \cdot \delta_w)v = \delta_w(\omega(x)v). \quad (3.5)$$

In the equation (3.7), $v, w \in V(\bar{\lambda})$, $\delta_w \in V^*(\bar{\lambda})$, $x \in \mathbf{U}(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$ and ω is the anti-involution on $\mathbf{U}(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$ which sends F_i to E_i and fixes H_i . Under this definition the dual $V^*(\bar{\lambda})$ is isomorphic to $V(\bar{\lambda})$ as a $\mathbf{U}(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$ -module.

As we will see next, the dual local Weyl module $W^*(\bar{\lambda})$ is defined similarly, by dualizing each weight space and taking the direct sum. However, we have to consider the fact that the weight spaces $W_{\bar{\nu}}(\bar{\lambda})$, $\bar{\nu} \in X$ are graded. We will need the following statement which is proven in Proposition 4.2 in [52].

Proposition 3.2.1. *The top degree elements of the weight space $W_{\bar{\nu}}(\bar{\lambda})$ have degree $d_{\bar{\nu}}^\lambda$.*

Definition 3.2.2. *Let $W_{\bar{\nu}}^*(\bar{\lambda})$ be the dual space of the vector space $W_{\bar{\nu}}(\bar{\lambda})$, spanned by elements $\{\delta_w\}_{w \in W_{\bar{\nu}}(\bar{\lambda})}$. We define the grading on $W_{\bar{\nu}}^*(\bar{\lambda})$ as follows:*

$$W_{\bar{\nu}}^*(\bar{\lambda})\{2r\} := (W_{\bar{\nu}}(\bar{\lambda})\{d_{\bar{\nu}}^\lambda - 2r\})^*,$$

and let $W_{\bar{\nu}}^*(\bar{\lambda}) = \bigoplus_{r \geq 0} W_{\bar{\nu}}^*(\bar{\lambda})\{2r\}$. Then

$$W^*(\bar{\lambda}) := \bigoplus_{\bar{\lambda} \geq \bar{\nu}} W_{\bar{\nu}}^*(\bar{\lambda}), \quad (3.6)$$

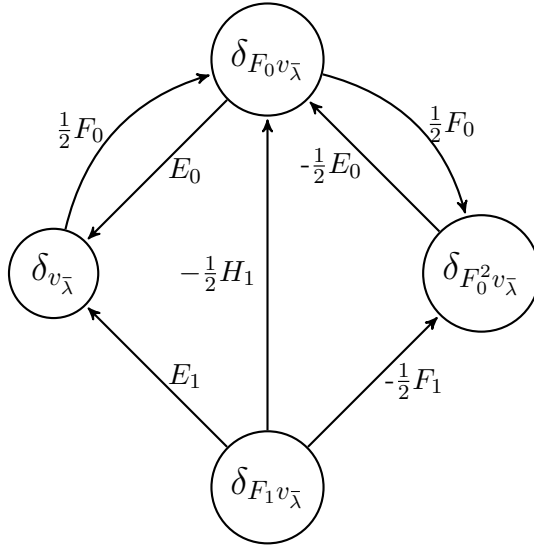
is called the dual Weyl module of highest weight $\bar{\lambda}$, together with a current algebra action

$$(x \cdot \delta_w)v = \delta_w(\omega(x)v), \quad (3.7)$$

where $v, w \in W(\bar{\lambda})$, $x \in \mathbf{U}(\mathfrak{sl}_n[t])$, and ω is the anti-involution on $\mathbf{U}(\mathfrak{sl}_n[t])$ which sends $F_{i,j}$ to $E_{i,j}$ and fixes $H_{i,j}$.

There is a non-degenerate bilinear pairing $(\delta_w, v) \mapsto \delta_w(v)$ of degree $d_{\bar{\nu}}^\lambda$ between $W_{\bar{\nu}}^*(\bar{\lambda})$ and $W_{\bar{\nu}}(\bar{\lambda})$. Note that current algebra action on local Weyl modules preserves the degree, but the generators $E_{i,j}$ and $F_{i,j}$ does not preserve the degree on dual Weyl module. The action of $H_{i,j}: W_{\bar{\nu}}^*(\bar{\lambda}) \rightarrow W_{\bar{\nu}}^*(\bar{\lambda})$ increases the degree by $2j$, while $E_{i,j}: W_{\bar{\nu}}^*(\bar{\lambda}) \rightarrow W_{\bar{\nu}+\alpha_i}^*(\bar{\lambda})$ increases the degree by $d_{\bar{\nu}}^\lambda - d_{\bar{\nu}+\alpha_i}^\lambda + 2j = 2(-\bar{\nu}_i - 1 + j)$, and $F_{i,j}: W_{\bar{\nu}}^*(\bar{\lambda}) \rightarrow W_{\bar{\nu}-\alpha_i}^*(\bar{\lambda})$ increases the degree by $d_{\bar{\nu}}^\lambda - d_{\bar{\nu}-\alpha_i}^\lambda + 2j = 2(\bar{\nu}_i - 1 + j)$.

For the case $n = 2$ and $\bar{\lambda} = 2\omega$, the dual Weyl module $W^*(\bar{\lambda})$ and the current algebra action has the following graphical description:



4 2-representations

While classical representation theory studies actions on vector spaces, 2-representation theory concerns with actions on \mathbb{k} -linear categories. Instead of linear maps, 2-representation theory studies linear functors and natural transformations between them. There has been significant progress in understanding 2-representations of \mathcal{U} . In this section we define some important examples of 2-representations of \mathcal{U} .

4.1 Integrable 2-representations

Definition 4.1.1. A 2-representation of \mathcal{U} is a graded, additive 2-functor $\Phi: \mathcal{U} \rightarrow \mathcal{K}$ for some graded, additive 2-category \mathcal{K} .

We will denote the image of an object $\bar{v} \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{U})$ under the 2-functor by $\mathcal{K}_{\bar{v}}$. A 2-representation $\Phi: \mathcal{U} \rightarrow \mathcal{K}$ is called *integrable* if the 1-morphisms $\Phi(\mathcal{E}_i)$ and $\Phi(\mathcal{F}_i)$ are locally nilpotent for all $i \in I$. Integrability condition implies that only finite number of objects can be non-zero in \mathcal{K} .

Definition 4.1.2. Let $\Phi_1: \mathcal{U} \rightarrow \mathcal{K}_1$ and $\Phi_2: \mathcal{U} \rightarrow \mathcal{K}_2$ be two representations. A strongly equivariant functor $\gamma: \mathcal{K}_1 \rightarrow \mathcal{K}_2$ is a collection of functors $\gamma(\bar{v}): \Phi_1(\bar{v}) \rightarrow \Phi_2(\bar{v})$ for each $\bar{v} \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{U})$ together with natural isomorphisms of functors $c_u: \gamma \circ \Phi_1(u) \cong \Phi_2(u) \circ \gamma$ for every 1-morphism $u \in \mathcal{U}$ such that

$$c_v(\text{Id}_{\gamma} \circ \Phi_1(\alpha)) \cong (\Phi_2(\alpha) \circ \text{Id}_{\gamma})c_u \quad (4.1)$$

for every 2-morphism $\alpha: u \rightarrow v$ in \mathcal{U} . In (4.1), we use \circ for horizontal composition, and multiplication for vertical composition of 2-morphisms. We call γ a strongly equivariant equivalence if $\gamma(\bar{v})$ is an equivalence for each $\bar{v} \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{U})$.

Fix a highest weight $\bar{\lambda}$. We define Rouquier's universal categorification $\mathcal{L}(\bar{\lambda})$ of the simple \mathfrak{sl}_n -module $V(\bar{\lambda})$ following Brundan-Davidson [14]. Let $\Phi_{\bar{\lambda}}: \mathcal{U} \rightarrow \mathcal{R}(\bar{\lambda})$ be the 2-representation defined by $\mathcal{R}(\bar{\lambda})_{\bar{v}} = \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{U}}(\bar{\lambda}, \bar{v})$, in words, $\Phi_{\bar{\lambda}}$ sends each $\bar{v} \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{U})$ to a the graded category of 1-morphisms $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{U}}(\bar{\lambda}, \bar{v})$ in \mathcal{U} . The 1-morphisms $\Phi_{\bar{\lambda}}(\mathcal{E}_i)$ and $\Phi_{\bar{\lambda}}(\mathcal{F}_i)$ are composing 1-morphisms on the left by \mathcal{E}_i and \mathcal{F}_i , and 2-morphisms horizontally on the left by $\uparrow_i^{\bar{v}}$ and $\downarrow_i^{\bar{v}}$ respectively. The 2-morphisms are generated by the 2-morphisms in \mathcal{U} .

Now let $\mathcal{I}(\bar{\lambda})$ be the full, additive 2-subcategory of $\mathcal{R}(\bar{\lambda})$ in which the objects are generated by objects of the form $R\mathcal{E}_i$, $i \in I$ for a 1-morphism R in \mathcal{U} from $\bar{\lambda} + \alpha_i$ to \bar{v} . We define the 2-category $\mathcal{V}(\bar{\lambda}) = \mathcal{R}(\bar{\lambda})/\mathcal{I}(\bar{\lambda})$ as a quotient of additive 2-categories. $\mathcal{V}(\bar{\lambda})$ has the same objects as in $\mathcal{R}(\bar{\lambda})$ and $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{V}(\bar{\lambda})}(a, b) = \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{R}(\bar{\lambda})}(a, b)/\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{I}(\bar{\lambda})}(a, b)$. $\Phi_{\bar{\lambda}}: \mathcal{U} \rightarrow \mathcal{R}(\bar{\lambda})$ induces a well-defined 2-representation $\Phi_{\bar{\lambda}}: \mathcal{U} \rightarrow \mathcal{V}(\bar{\lambda})$.

There is another construction of a 2-representation called the *minimal categorification* $\Phi_{\bar{\lambda}}^{\min}: \mathcal{U} \rightarrow \mathcal{V}_{\min}(\bar{\lambda})$ of the irreducible \mathfrak{sl}_n -module $V(\bar{\lambda})$. The image $\Phi_{\bar{\lambda}}^{\min}(\bar{\lambda})$ of the object $\bar{\lambda}$ is isomorphic to the ground field \mathbb{k} , and the image of 2-morphisms of \mathcal{U} in $\mathcal{V}_{\min}(\bar{\lambda})$ is finite-dimensional. Actually, Rouquier [53, 54] proves that any 2-representation Φ which categorifies $V(\bar{\lambda})$ such that $\Phi(\bar{\lambda}) \simeq \mathbb{k}$ is strongly equivariantly equivalent to $\Phi_{\bar{\lambda}}^{\min}$.

The 2-representations $\Phi_{\bar{\lambda}}$ and $\Phi_{\bar{\lambda}}^{\min}$ are integrable. They are related to module categories of cyclotomic KLR algebras as we will see next.

4.2 Cyclotomic KLR algebras

In this subsection we define the cyclotomic quotients of KLR algebras. Their module category is a 2-representation and has an interesting trace decategorification. We start by defining KLR algebras using the diagrammatics that is given in [33].

Let $\beta = \sum_{i \in I} \beta_i \alpha_i$ be a linear combination of simple roots over \mathbb{Z}^+ . Let $R(\beta)$ be the graded \mathbb{k} -algebra generated by diagrams

$$x_i^r = \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \bullet \\ \downarrow \\ i \end{array}^r, \quad i \in I, r \geq 0 \quad \tau_{ij} = \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \searrow \\ i \quad j \end{array}, \quad i, j \in I \quad (4.2)$$

with β_i number of i labeled strands subject to the relations (2.15)-(2.19). The multiplication is given by stacking two diagrams on top of each other from bottom to top if the labels of strands at the conjunction match, and zero otherwise. The diagrams are subject to the following relations:

$$\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \searrow \\ \nearrow \\ \searrow \\ i \quad j \end{array} \end{array} = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } a_{ij} = 2, \\ \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \quad \uparrow \\ i \quad j \end{array} & \text{if } a_{ij} = 0, \\ \begin{array}{c} \bullet \\ \uparrow \\ i \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ j \end{array} + \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ i \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \bullet \\ \uparrow \\ j \end{array} & \text{if } a_{ij} = -1, \end{cases} \quad (4.3)$$

$$\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \searrow \\ \bullet \\ i \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \searrow \\ i \end{array} - \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \searrow \\ \bullet \\ i \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \searrow \\ i \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \bullet \\ \nearrow \\ i \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \searrow \\ i \end{array} - \begin{array}{c} \bullet \\ \searrow \\ i \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \searrow \\ i \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ i \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ i \end{array} . \end{array} \quad (4.4)$$

For $i \neq j$ we also have

$$\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \searrow \\ \bullet \\ i \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \searrow \\ j \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \searrow \\ \bullet \\ j \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \searrow \\ i \end{array} , \quad \begin{array}{c} \bullet \\ \nearrow \\ i \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \searrow \\ j \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \searrow \\ \bullet \\ j \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \searrow \\ i \end{array} . \end{array} \quad (4.5)$$

If $i \neq k$ and $a_{ij} \geq 0$, the relation

$$\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \searrow \\ \nearrow \\ \searrow \\ i \quad j \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ k \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ i \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \searrow \\ \nearrow \\ \searrow \\ j \quad k \end{array} \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ j \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \searrow \\ \nearrow \\ \searrow \\ i \quad k \end{array} \end{array} \quad (4.6)$$

holds. Otherwise if $a_{ij} = -1$, we have

$$\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \searrow \\ \nearrow \\ \searrow \\ i \quad j \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ i \end{array} - \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ i \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \searrow \\ \nearrow \\ \searrow \\ j \quad i \end{array} = t_{ij} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ i \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ j \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ i \end{array} . \end{array} \quad (4.7)$$

The multiplication is zero if the labels at the conjunction of diagrams do not match. We will call both $R(\beta)$ and $R = \bigoplus_{\beta} R(\beta)$ KLR algebra when there is no confusion. Let $R(\beta)\text{-pMod}$ be the category of graded, finitely-generated, projective $R(\beta)$ -modules. In [33] Proposition 3.18, Khovanov and Lauda showed that

$$R\text{-pMod} = \bigoplus_{\beta} R(\beta)\text{-pMod}$$

categorifies the positive half ${}_{\mathcal{A}}\dot{U}_q^+(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$ of ${}_{\mathcal{A}}\dot{U}_q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$.

Definition 4.2.1. For a dominant \mathfrak{sl}_n weight $\bar{\lambda} \in X$, the cyclotomic quotient $R^{\bar{\lambda}}(\beta)$ of the KLR algebra $R(\beta)$ is the quotient, in which leftmost strand with color i and $\bar{\lambda}_i$ dots is set to be zero for all $i \in I$:

$$\begin{array}{c} \bar{\lambda}_i \\ \bullet \\ \uparrow \\ i \end{array} \dots = 0 . \quad (4.8)$$

The algebra

$$R^{\bar{\lambda}} := \bigoplus_{\beta \in \mathbb{N}[I]} R^{\bar{\lambda}}(\beta). \quad (4.9)$$

is called *cyclotomic KLR algebra* and its summand $R^{\bar{\lambda}}(\beta)$ is called *cyclotomic KLR algebra of rank β* .

$R^{\bar{\lambda}}$ is a graded, unital and finite-dimensional algebra. The algebra $R^{\bar{\lambda}}$ is interesting for the following reason. There is a 2-representation $\mathcal{U} \rightarrow R^{\bar{\lambda}}\text{-pMod}$ (see Theorem 3.17 in [61] for the details). $R^{\bar{\lambda}}\text{-pMod}$ categorifies the irreducible finite-dimensional ${}_{\mathcal{A}}\dot{\mathcal{U}}_q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$ -module with the highest weight $\bar{\lambda}$. This result was first conjectured by Khovanov and Lauda in [33], and proved later independently by Brundan and Kleshchev [16], Kang and Kashiwara [32], Webster [61].

We now define a deformation of $R^{\bar{\lambda}}$ according to Webster [61]. Let $\text{End}_{\mathcal{U}}(\bigoplus_i 1_{\bar{\lambda}} \mathcal{E}_i)$ be the endomorphism algebra of direct sums of 1-morphisms in \mathcal{U} of form $1_{\bar{\lambda}} \mathcal{E}_{i_1}^{a_1} \dots \mathcal{E}_{i_l}^{a_l}$, $l \geq 0$, $a_1, \dots, a_l \geq 0$, $i_1, \dots, i_l \in I$.

Definition 4.2.2. Let $\check{R}^{\bar{\lambda}}$ be the quotient of $\text{End}_{\mathcal{U}}(\bigoplus_i 1_{\bar{\lambda}} \mathcal{E}_i)$ by the relations

$$\bar{\lambda} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \bullet \\ \bar{\lambda}_i \\ \vdots \\ i \end{array} \dots + \begin{array}{c} \bar{\lambda} \\ \curvearrowright \\ i \\ \bullet \\ \spadesuit+1 \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \bullet \\ \bar{\lambda}_{i-1} \\ \vdots \\ i \end{array} + \dots + \begin{array}{c} \bar{\lambda} \\ \curvearrowright \\ i \\ \bullet \\ \spadesuit+\bar{\lambda}_i-1 \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \bullet \\ \bar{\lambda}_i \\ \vdots \\ i \end{array} \dots = 0, \quad (4.10)$$

$$\begin{array}{c} \bar{\lambda} \\ \curvearrowright \\ i \\ \bullet \\ r \end{array} = 0 \quad \text{for all } r \geq 0. \quad (4.11)$$

for all $i \in I$.

The following result is due to Webster [61], section 3.5:

Theorem 4.2.3. The algebra $\check{R}^{\bar{\lambda}}$ is a flat deformation of $R^{\bar{\lambda}}$.

Unlike $R^{\bar{\lambda}}$, $\check{R}^{\bar{\lambda}}$ is infinite-dimensional. The category $\check{R}^{\bar{\lambda}}\text{-pMod}$ also admits an action of \mathcal{U} , and this action gives another categorification of $V(\bar{\lambda})$. The next theorem, proven by Rouquier (see Theorem 4.19 in [13]), relates universal categorification $\mathcal{V}(\bar{\lambda})$ and $\check{R}^{\bar{\lambda}}\text{-pMod}$.

Theorem 4.2.4. There is a strongly equivariant equivalence between $\check{R}^{\bar{\lambda}}\text{-pMod}$ and the Karoubi envelope of $\mathcal{V}(\bar{\lambda})$.

The next theorem shows the universality property of $\check{R}^{\bar{\lambda}}\text{-pMod}$ (see Corollary 5.7 in Rouquier [53]). It emphasizes the importance of $\check{R}^{\bar{\lambda}}\text{-pMod}$ in higher representation theory and its relation to other integrable 2-representations.

Theorem 4.2.5. *Given a 2-representation $\Phi: \mathcal{U} \rightarrow \mathcal{K}$ for some additive, idempotent complete 2-category such that $\Phi(\mathcal{E}_i)(\mathcal{K}_{\bar{\lambda}}) = 0$ for all $i \in I$ there is a unique strongly equivariant functor $\check{R}^{\bar{\lambda}}\text{-pMod} \rightarrow \mathcal{K}$.*

Let $\Phi: \mathcal{U} \rightarrow \mathcal{K}$ be a 2-representation. By functoriality of the trace, Φ induces a \mathbb{C} -algebra homomorphism

$$\mathrm{Tr} \mathcal{U} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Tr} \Phi} \mathrm{Tr} \mathcal{K}. \quad (4.12)$$

We compose $\mathrm{Tr} \Phi$ with $\dot{\mathbf{U}}(\mathfrak{sl}_n[t]) \xrightarrow{\rho} \mathrm{Tr} \mathcal{U}$ to obtain a \mathbb{C} -algebra homomorphism

$$\dot{\mathbf{U}}(\mathfrak{sl}_n[t]) \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Tr} \Phi} \mathrm{Tr} \mathcal{K}. \quad (4.13)$$

Since \mathcal{K} is a cyclic 2-category, $\mathrm{Tr} \mathcal{K}$ acts on the center of objects $Z(\mathcal{K})$. Thus, combining this action with the algebra homomorphism (4.13), we deduce that $Z(\mathcal{K})$ is a current algebra module.

Let $Z(R^{\bar{\lambda}}\text{-pMod}) = \bigoplus_{\bar{\nu} \leq \bar{\lambda}} Z(R^{\bar{\lambda}}(\bar{\lambda} - \bar{\nu}))\text{-pMod}$ be the center of objects of $R^{\bar{\lambda}}\text{-pMod}$, and it is the same as the center $Z(R^{\bar{\lambda}})$ of the cyclotomic KLR algebra $R^{\bar{\lambda}}$. Hence, by the homomorphism (4.13), both $\mathrm{Tr} R^{\bar{\lambda}}$ and $Z(R^{\bar{\lambda}})$ becomes a current algebra module.

There is a map $t: R^{\bar{\lambda}} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ which is a Frobenius trace (see Theorem 3.18, [61]). This means that the kernel of the map $t: R^{\bar{\lambda}} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ contains no nonzero left ideal of $R^{\bar{\lambda}}$. The map can be realized diagrammatically by closing the diagram representing an element in $R^{\bar{\lambda}}$ to the right. We obtain an element in $R^{\bar{\lambda}}(0) \simeq \mathbb{C}$:

$$\bar{\lambda} \quad \begin{array}{c} | \\ | \\ | \\ \hline a \\ \hline | \\ | \\ | \end{array} \quad \mapsto \quad \bar{\lambda} \quad \begin{array}{c} | \\ | \\ | \\ \hline a \\ \hline | \\ | \\ | \end{array} \quad (4.14)$$

The map $t: R^{\bar{\lambda}} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ is symmetric, that is, $t(aa') = t(a'a)$ for all $a, a' \in R^{\bar{\lambda}}$. This map induces a non-degenerate $Z(R^{\bar{\lambda}}(\beta))$ -bilinear form $t: Z(R^{\bar{\lambda}}(\beta)) \times \mathrm{Tr} R^{\bar{\lambda}}(\beta) \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ of degree $-d_{\bar{\lambda}-\beta}^{\bar{\lambda}}$ (see [56], Prop. 3.10).

We will need the following crucial result, which is proven by independently Beliakova-Habiro-Lauda-Webster [5], Theorem 7.3 and Shan-Varagnolo-Vasserot [56], Theorem 3.34.

Theorem 4.2.6. *As a current algebra module, $\mathrm{Tr} R^{\bar{\lambda}}$ is isomorphic to the local Weyl module $W(\bar{\lambda})$. Dually, $Z(R^{\bar{\lambda}})$ is isomorphic to the dual local Weyl module $W^*(\bar{\lambda})$.*

4.3 Web algebra and foamation 2-representation

In this subsection we give a short overview of quantum skew duality, foamation 2-functor and Queffelec-Rose annular \mathfrak{sl}_m link homology. Foamation 2-representation is interesting for it has a direct application in Khovanov-Rozansky homology theory.

Quantum skew Howe duality

Fix an integer $m \geq 2$ and let $\mathcal{P}_m(n, N)$ be the set of n -compositions of N with entries in the set $\{0, 1, \dots, m\}$. The action of the quantum group $\mathbf{U}_q(\mathfrak{sl}_m)$ on the vector representation \mathbb{C}_q^m induces action on the quantized wedge product $\wedge_q^a \mathbb{C}_q^m$. The $\mathbf{U}_q(\mathfrak{sl}_m)$ -modules $\wedge_q^a \mathbb{C}_q^m$, $1 \leq a \leq m$ are called fundamental representations. Cautis-Kamnitzer-Morrison [19] use the \mathfrak{sl}_m web category to describe the pivotal category $\mathbf{grRep}(\mathfrak{sl}_m)$ of $\mathbf{U}_q(\mathfrak{sl}_m)$ -modules generated by the fundamental representations. The category $m\mathbf{Web}_n(N)$ is defined as follows.

- Objects are the elements $\nu \in \mathcal{P}_m(n, N)$ labeling n points in the interval $[0, 1]$, together with a zero object.
- *Webs* are directed, labeled trivalent graphs with boundary, for example,

$$\begin{array}{c} b \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ a+b \leftarrow \quad \rightarrow \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ a \end{array} \quad , \quad \begin{array}{c} b \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \quad \quad \quad \rightarrow a+b \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ a \end{array} . \tag{4.15}$$

The composition of webs is joining the webs from right to left if the labels at the adjunction match, and zero otherwise. Morphisms in $m\mathbf{Web}_n(N)$ are given by $\mathbb{C}(q)$ -linear combinations of webs, generated by two webs (4.15), modulo planar isotopies and relations. We read webs from right to left. Edges labeled zero are erased. If a label lies outside the range $\{0, \dots, n\}$, then the morphism is zero.

The object $\nu \in \mathcal{P}_m(n, N)$ corresponds to the $\mathbf{U}_q(\mathfrak{sl}_m)$ -module

$$\wedge_q^\nu \mathbb{C}_q^m := \wedge_q^{\nu_1} \mathbb{C}_q^m \otimes \dots \otimes \wedge_q^{\nu_n} \mathbb{C}_q^m,$$

and the webs (4.15) are the unique (up to a scalar multiple) canonical maps $\wedge_q^{a+b} \mathbb{C}_q^m \rightarrow \wedge_q^a \mathbb{C}_q^m \otimes \wedge_q^b \mathbb{C}_q^m$ and $\wedge_q^a \mathbb{C}_q^m \otimes \wedge_q^b \mathbb{C}_q^m \rightarrow \wedge_q^{a+b} \mathbb{C}_q^m$.

Cautis-Kamnitzer-Morrison [19] prove the existence of the functor

$$\varphi_{m,N}: \dot{\mathbf{U}}_q(\mathfrak{sl}_m) \rightarrow m\mathbf{Web}_n(N), \tag{4.16}$$

called the *quantum skew Howe duality*. On the level of objects, $\varphi_{m,N}$ sends the \mathfrak{sl}_n weight μ to the composition $\nu \in \mathcal{P}_m(n, N)$ if there is ν that satisfies $\mu = \bar{\nu}$, and to the zero object otherwise. On the level of objects, $\varphi_{m,N}$ is defined as follows:

$$\varphi_{m,N}(\mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}}) := \begin{array}{c} \leftarrow \nu_1 \\ \leftarrow \nu_2 \\ \vdots \\ \leftarrow \nu_n \end{array}, \quad (4.17)$$

$$\varphi_{m,N}(E_i \mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}}) := \begin{array}{c} \nu_i + 1 \leftarrow \nu_i \\ \quad \quad \quad \swarrow \quad \searrow \\ \nu_{i+1} - 1 \leftarrow \nu_{i+1} \end{array}, \quad \varphi_{m,N}(F_i \mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}}) := \begin{array}{c} \nu_i - 1 \leftarrow \nu_i \\ \quad \quad \quad \swarrow \quad \searrow \\ \nu_{i+1} + 1 \leftarrow \nu_{i+1} \end{array}.$$

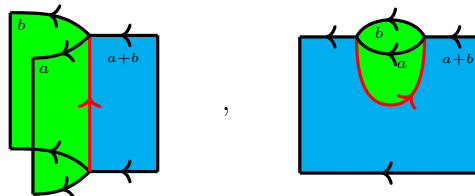
Cautis-Kamnitzer-Morrison [19] build on the previous work on the geometric quantum skew Howe duality by Cautis-Kamnitzer-Licata [20] and give the list of relations between morphisms in $m\mathbf{Web}_n(N)$.

The foamation 2-functor

Here we give Lauda-Queffelec-Rose (see [40] for $m = 2, 3$ and [51] for any m) combinatorial categorification of the quantum skew Howe duality. This is another example of a 2-representation of \mathcal{U} . This 2-representation is particularly interesting for \mathfrak{sl}_m link homology theory. We only give an overview here and refer the reader to the original papers for the details.

Let $m\mathbf{Foam}_n(N)$ be the 2-category whose

- objects are the elements $\nu \in \mathcal{P}_m(n, N)$ labeling n points in the interval $[0, 1]$, together with a zero object.
- 1-morphisms are formal direct sums of the compositions of \mathfrak{sl}_m web diagrams together with their formal degree shifts.
- 2-morphisms are matrices of \mathbb{k} -linear combinations of \mathfrak{sl}_m foams – labeled, decorated singular surfaces with oriented seams whose horizontal slices are \mathfrak{sl}_m webs, for example,



subject to local relations. Vertical and horizontal compositions of 2-morphisms are given by attaching along the relevant boundaries. Each foam is assigned a degree and the local relations preserve this degree.

We refer to [51], Section 3.1 for the precise set of generators and relations since we will not use them here. Lauda-Queffelec-Rose [40, 51] construct 2-representations

$$\Phi_{m,N}: \mathcal{U}_Q(\mathfrak{sl}_n) \rightarrow m\mathbf{Foam}_n(N) \quad (4.18)$$

for each $m \geq 2, N > 0$, called *foamation functors* (the term first used in [44]). On the level of objects the foamation functor $\Phi_{m,N}$ sends $\mu \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{U}_Q(\mathfrak{sl}_n))$ to the composition $\nu \in \mathcal{P}_m(n, N)$ such that $\mu = \bar{\nu}$ if such solution exists and to the zero object otherwise. On the level of 1-morphisms $\Phi_{m,N}$ maps the 1-morphisms of $\mathcal{U}_Q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$ to the 1-morphisms (4.17) with the same name. The complete description of the images of 2-morphisms will be skipped here. For example, we have

$$\Phi_{m,N} \left(\begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ i \quad \searrow \\ \nwarrow \\ i \quad \nearrow \\ \bar{\nu} \end{array} \right) = \begin{array}{c} \text{[Diagram: A blue square containing a green vertical strip with two red arcs crossing it, representing a foam.]} \\ \cdot \end{array}$$

The foamation functor $\Phi_{m,N}$ is an integrable 2-representation, and if $m \geq N$, $\Phi_{m,N}$ factors through $\check{R}^{\bar{\lambda}_0}\text{-}p\text{Mod}$ for the highest weight $\bar{\lambda}_0 = (N, 0, \dots, 0)$.

The 2-category $m\mathbf{Foam}_n(N)$ is interesting for the following reason: it categorifies the \mathfrak{sl}_m web category $m\mathbf{Web}_n(N)$. Moreover, $\Phi_{m,N}$ gives a combinatorial categorification of the quantum skew Howe duality functor $\varphi_{m,N}$. In the case $m = 2$, $2\mathbf{Foam}_n(N)$ is a modification of the Bar-Natan's skein category of 2-dimensional cobordisms, originally developed by Blanchet to fix functoriality of the Khovanov homology. For general m , the 2-representation $\Phi_{m,N}$ is used in [51] to construct Khovanov-Rozansky homology combinatorially.

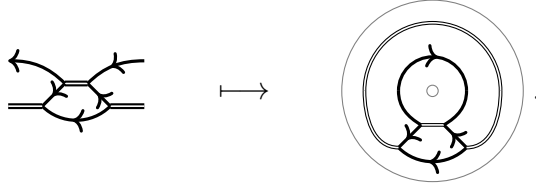
Let $m\mathbf{Foam}_n^*(N)$ be the graded version of the 2-category $m\mathbf{Foam}_n(N)$. Then the foamation functor $\Phi_{m,N}$ extends to a 2-representation $\Phi_{m,N}^*: \mathcal{U} \rightarrow m\mathbf{Foam}_n^*(N)$. Note that since we have killed the gradings on 1-morphisms in $m\mathbf{Foam}_n^*(N)$, this will translate into $q = 1$ in the split Grothendieck group and $K_0(m\mathbf{Foam}_n^*(N))$ will be equivalent to the monoidal category of finite-dimensional \mathfrak{sl}_m representations.

Annular \mathfrak{sl}_n link homology

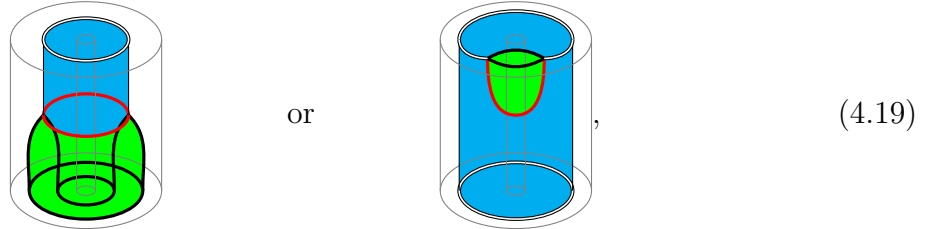
Queffelec and Rose [50] compose the foamation and the trace functor to construct an invariant *sutured annular Khovanov-Rozansky homology* $\text{saKhR}(\mathcal{L})$ for a given colored, framed,

annular link \mathcal{L} . We briefly discuss their construction for the rest of this section. Readers who are not familiar with the basics of link homologies may skip to the next section.

We consider the horizontal trace $\mathrm{Tr}^h m\mathbf{Foam}_n(N)$ of the foam 2-category. Let $\mathcal{A} := S^1 \times [0, 1]$ be the annulus. The objects in $\mathrm{Tr}^h m\mathbf{Foam}_n(N)$ can be described as graded formal direct sums of annular closures of 1-endomorphisms in $m\mathbf{Foam}_n(N)$, for example,



The morphisms in $\mathrm{Tr}^h m\mathbf{Foam}_n(N)$ are matrices of \mathbb{k} -linear combinations of degree zero foams embedded in $\mathcal{A} \times [0, 1]$, for example,



modulo isotopy and local relations.

In [20] Theorem 4.3, Cautis-Kamnitzer-Licata prove that composing the quantum skew Howe duality functor with the action of the quantum Weyl group action gives the braiding in $\mathbf{grRep}(\mathfrak{sl}_m)$. In [18], Cautis categorifies the quantum Weyl group to Rickard complexes in $\mathcal{U}_Q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$, which can be utilized to obtain categorical braid group actions on 2-representations. Lauda-Queffelec-Rose [40, 51] show that the images of Rickards complexes give the categorified skein relations to formulate Khovanov-Rozansky homology. The categorified skein relations assign a complex of webs in $m\mathbf{Foam}_n(N)$ to any framed tangle. This complex, viewed in the homotopy category of complexes in $m\mathbf{Foam}_n(N)$ is an invariant of the given framed tangle.

Since any framed link \mathcal{L} in the thickened annulus $\mathcal{A} \times [0, 1]$ can be presented as the annular closure of a framed tangle, we can assign to \mathcal{L} a complex $C(\mathcal{L})$ in $\mathrm{Tr}^h m\mathbf{Foam}_n(N)$ using the functoriality of the horizontal trace.

Queffelec and Rose modify $\mathrm{Tr}\mathcal{U}$ and $\mathrm{Tr} m\mathbf{Foam}_n^*(N)$ to $\widetilde{\mathrm{Tr}}\mathcal{U}_Q(\mathfrak{sl}_n)$ and $\widetilde{\mathrm{Tr}} m\mathbf{Foam}_n(N)$ so that the objects admit formal q -shifts and only degree zero morphisms are allowed. Since we have an algebra isomorphism $\mathrm{Tr}\mathcal{U} \cong \dot{\mathcal{U}}(\mathfrak{sl}_n[t])$, the morphisms in $\widetilde{\mathrm{Tr}}\mathcal{U}$ are q -shifts of elements of current algebra. Composing $\widetilde{\mathrm{Tr}}$ with the foamation functor $\Phi_{m,N}$ and setting $t = 0$ gives the map $\widetilde{\mathrm{Tr}}\mathcal{U} \rightarrow \mathbf{grRep}(\mathfrak{sl}_m)$ which factors through $\widetilde{\mathrm{Tr}} m\mathbf{Foam}_n(N)$. This

induces a functor

$$\tilde{\varphi}_{m,N}: \widetilde{\mathrm{Tr}}\, m\mathbf{Foam}_n(N) \rightarrow \mathbf{grRep}(\mathfrak{sl}_m). \quad (4.20)$$

Then Queffelec and Rose go on to prove that the homotopy category of complexes of in $\widetilde{\mathrm{Tr}}\, m\mathbf{Foam}_n(N)$ and in $\mathrm{Tr}^h\, m\mathbf{Foam}_n(N)$ are equivalent:

$$Kom(\widetilde{\mathrm{Tr}}\, m\mathbf{Foam}_n(N)) \cong Kom(\mathrm{Tr}^h\, m\mathbf{Foam}_n(N)).$$

Hence, for the complex $C(\mathcal{L})$ in $\mathrm{Tr}^h\, m\mathbf{Foam}_n(N)$ assigned to a colored annular link \mathcal{L} there is a homotopy equivalent complex $\tilde{C}(\mathcal{L})$ in $\widetilde{\mathrm{Tr}}\, m\mathbf{Foam}_n(N)$.

We now apply the functor (4.20) on the complex $\tilde{C}(\mathcal{L})$. The image $\tilde{\varphi}_{m,N}(\tilde{C}(\mathcal{L}))$ is a complex in the homotopy category of complexes in $\mathbf{grRep}(\mathfrak{sl}_m)$. The homology of this complex is the $\mathbf{saKhR}(\mathcal{L})$ homology, which is an invariant of \mathcal{L} . In the case $n = 2$ this homology is called *sutured annular Khovanov homology* ($\mathbf{saKh}(\mathcal{L})$).

5 The 2-category \mathbf{Pol}_N

In this section we will construct an integrable 2-representation of \mathcal{U} using symmetric polynomials. This is very similar to Khovanov-Lauda's construction of the 2-representation using cohomology ring of flag varieties. We will compare this 2-representation to Rouquier's universal categorification.

5.1 Symmetric polynomials

We denote the set of n -compositions and n -partitions of N by $\mathcal{P}(n, N)$ and $\mathcal{P}^+(n, N)$, respectively. The algebra of polynomials $P = \mathbb{C}[X_1, X_2, \dots, X_N]$ in N commuting variables admits an action of the symmetric group S_N . The action of $\sigma \in S_N$ on a polynomial $q(X_1, X_2, \dots, X_N) \in P$ is defined as

$$\sigma q(X_1, X_2, \dots, X_N) = q(X_{\sigma(1)}, X_{\sigma(2)}, \dots, X_{\sigma(N)}).$$

We will assume that all variables are of degree 2. By $Sym_N = P^{S_N}$, we denote the subalgebra of symmetric polynomials. Consider a n -composition $\nu = (\nu_1, \nu_2, \dots, \nu_n) \in \mathcal{P}(n, N)$ and the parabolic subgroup $S_\nu = S_{\nu_1} \times S_{\nu_2} \times \dots \times S_{\nu_n}$. To be clear, there are many subgroups of S_N isomorphic to S_ν , but all of them are conjugate. Let $P_\nu = P^{S_\nu}$ be the subalgebra of P which is symmetric separately in the first ν_1 variables, in the second ν_2 variables and so on. We have $P_{(1,1,\dots,1)} = P$ and $P_{(N,0,\dots,0)} = Sym_N$.

For $r \geq 0$ and $1 \leq i \leq n$, let $e_r(\nu; i)$, $h_r(\nu; i)$ and $p_r(\nu; i)$ be the r -th elementary, complete and power sum symmetric polynomials respectively, in variables

$$\Omega_i = \{X_k \mid \nu_1 + \cdots + \nu_{i-1} + 1 \leq k \leq \nu_1 + \cdots + \nu_i\}.$$

For example, if $N = 6$, $n = 3$, and $\nu = (2, 1, 3)$, then $e_r(\nu; 1) = e_r(X_1, X_2)$, $e_1(\nu; 2) = e_1(X_3) = X_3$, and $e_r(\nu; 3) = e_r(X_4, X_5, X_6)$. The algebra P_ν is generated by $\{e_r(\nu; i)\}_{r \geq 0, 1 \leq i \leq n}$, as well as by $\{h_r(\nu; i)\}_{r \geq 0, 1 \leq i \leq n}$ or by $\{p_r(\nu; i)\}_{r \geq 0, 1 \leq i \leq n}$.

We extend our notation by defining the following symmetric polynomials:

$$h_r(\nu; i_1, \dots, i_m) = \sum_{r_1 + \cdots + r_m = r} h_{r_1}(\nu; i_1) h_{r_2}(\nu; i_2) \cdots h_{r_m}(\nu; i_m), \quad (5.1)$$

$$e_r(\nu; i_1, \dots, i_m) = \sum_{r_1 + \cdots + r_m = r} e_{r_1}(\nu; i_1) e_{r_2}(\nu; i_2) \cdots e_{r_m}(\nu; i_m), \quad (5.2)$$

where $1 \leq i_1 < \cdots < i_m \leq n$, $m > 0$. It is not difficult to see that $e_r(\nu; i_1, i_2, \dots, i_m)$ and $h_r(\nu; i_1, i_2, \dots, i_m)$ are the r -th elementary and complete symmetric polynomials, respectively, in variables $\Omega_{i_1} \cup \cdots \cup \Omega_{i_m}$. This follows from the following well-known identities about symmetric polynomials, which can be found in [43]. We have

$$\sum_{s=0}^r (-1)^s e_s(x_1, \dots, x_n) h_{r-s}(x_1, \dots, x_n) = 0 \quad \text{for all } r \geq 1, \quad (5.3)$$

and for $r \geq 0$ we have

$$h_r(X_1, \dots, X_p, Y_1, \dots, Y_q) = \sum_{s=0}^r h_s(X_1, \dots, X_p) h_{r-s}(Y_1, \dots, Y_q), \quad (5.4)$$

$$e_r(X_1, \dots, X_p, Y_1, \dots, Y_q) = \sum_{s=0}^r e_s(X_1, \dots, X_p) e_{r-s}(Y_1, \dots, Y_q), \quad (5.5)$$

$$h_r(Y_1, \dots, Y_q) = \sum_{s=0}^r (-1)^s e_s(X_1, \dots, X_p) h_{r-s}(X_1, \dots, X_p, Y_1, \dots, Y_q), \quad (5.6)$$

$$e_r(Y_1, \dots, Y_q) = \sum_{s=0}^r (-1)^s h_s(X_1, \dots, X_p) e_{r-s}(X_1, \dots, X_p, Y_1, \dots, Y_q). \quad (5.7)$$

By convention, $e_r(X_1, \dots, X_p) = h_r(X_1, \dots, X_p) = p_r(X_1, \dots, X_p) = 0$ for $r < 0$, and $e_0(X_1, \dots, X_p) = h_0(X_1, \dots, X_p) = p_0(X_1, \dots, X_p) = 1$. Moreover, $e_r(X_1, \dots, X_p) = 0$ holds for all $r > p$.

Let $\nu = (\nu_1, \dots, \nu_n) \in \mathcal{P}(n, N)$ be a n -composition of a fixed positive integer N as before. By $\nu - \alpha_i \in \mathcal{P}(n, N)$ and $\nu + \alpha_i \in \mathcal{P}(n, N)$, we mean the linear sum

$$\nu - \alpha_i = (\nu_1, \dots, \nu_{i-1}, \nu_i - 1, \nu_{i+1} + 1, \nu_{i+2}, \dots, \nu_n),$$

$$\nu + \alpha_i = (\nu_1, \dots, \nu_{i-1}, \nu_i + 1, \nu_{i+1} - 1, \nu_{i+2}, \dots, \nu_n),$$

if all components are non-negative, otherwise we set them to \emptyset . We will also need the following compositions. Define the compositions $(\nu - \alpha_i, \nu) \in \mathcal{P}(n+1, N)$ and $(\nu + \alpha_i, \nu) \in \mathcal{P}(n+1, N)$

$$(\nu - \alpha_i, \nu) = (\nu_1, \dots, \nu_{i-1}, \nu_i - 1, 1, \nu_{i+1}, \nu_{i+2}, \dots, \nu_n),$$

$$(\nu + \alpha_i, \nu) = (\nu_1, \dots, \nu_{i-1}, \nu_i, 1, \nu_{i+1} - 1, \nu_{i+2}, \dots, \nu_n),$$

if all components are non-negative, and \emptyset otherwise. Recall the definition of the ring $P_\nu = P^{S_\nu}$. We can also define the rings $P_{\nu - \alpha_i, \nu}$ and $P_{\nu + \alpha_i, \nu}$ corresponding to the compositions $(\nu - \alpha_i, \nu)$ and $(\nu + \alpha_i, \nu)$ as well. Notice that $P_{\nu - \alpha_i, \nu}$ is a free P_ν -module with basis $\{1, X_{k_i}, \dots, X_{k_i}^{\nu_i - 1}\}$, where $k_i = \sum_{j=1}^i \nu_j$, and a free $P_{\nu - \alpha_i}$ -module with basis $\{1, X_{k_i}, \dots, X_{k_i}^{\nu_i + 1}\}$. This is due to the fact that $P^{S_{l-1}}$ is a free P^{S_l} -module with basis $\{1, X_l, X_l^2, \dots, X_l^{l-1}\}$.

Example 5.1.1. *If $\nu = (2, 1, 3)$ and $i = 1$, then $\nu - \alpha_1 = (1, 2, 3)$, $k_1 = 2$ and $(\nu - \alpha_1, \nu) = (1, 1, 1, 3)$ and we have*

$$P_\nu = \langle e_r(X_1, X_2), X_3, e_r(X_4, X_5, X_6) \rangle,$$

$$P_{\nu - \alpha_1} = \langle X_1, e_r(X_2, X_3), e_r(X_4, X_5, X_6) \rangle,$$

$$P_{\nu - \alpha_1, \nu} = \langle X_1, X_2, X_3, e_r(X_4, X_5, X_6) \rangle.$$

It is easy to see that we have $X_1 = e_1(X_1, X_2) - X_2$, and $P_{\nu - \alpha_1, \nu}$ is a free P_ν -module with basis $\{1, X_2\}$.

We agree that $P_{\nu - \alpha_i, \nu}$ is a right P_ν -module and a left $P_{\nu - \alpha_i}$ -module, although this is artificial, since $P_{\nu, \nu - \alpha_i}$ is a commutative ring. Similarly, $P_{\nu + \alpha_i, \nu}$ is a free right P_ν -module with basis $\{1, X_{k_i+1}, \dots, X_{k_i+1}^{\nu_i}\}$ and a free left $P_{\nu + \alpha_i}$ -module with basis $\{1, X_{k_i+1}, \dots, X_{k_i+1}^{\nu_i+1-1}\}$. The following relations hold in $P_{\nu - \alpha_i, \nu}$:

$$e_r(\nu; i+1) = \sum_{s=0}^r (-1)^s e_{r-s}(\nu - \alpha_i; i+1) X_{k_i}^s. \quad (5.8)$$

$$e_r(\nu - \alpha_i; i) = \sum_{s=0}^r (-1)^s X_{k_i}^s e_{r-s}(\nu; i), \quad (5.9)$$

$$e_r(\nu - \alpha_i; i+1) = X_{k_i} e_{r-1}(\nu; i+1) + e_r(\nu; i+1), \quad (5.10)$$

$$e_r(\nu; i) = e_{r-1}(\nu - \alpha_i; i) X_{k_i} + e_r(\nu - \alpha_i; i), \quad (5.11)$$

$$h_r(\nu; i+1) = h_r(\nu - \alpha_i; i+1) - h_{r-1}(\nu - \alpha_i; i+1) X_{k_i}, \quad (5.12)$$

$$h_r(\nu - \alpha_i; i) = h_r(\nu; i) - X_{k_i} h_{r-1}(\nu; i), \quad (5.13)$$

$$h_r(\nu - \alpha_i; i+1) = \sum_{s=0}^r X_{k_i}^s h_{r-s}(\nu; i+1), \quad (5.14)$$

$$h_r(\nu; i) = \sum_{s=0}^r h_{r-s}(\nu - \alpha_i; i) X_{k_i}^s, \quad (5.15)$$

which are easily seen to follow from the properties (5.4), (5.6) of symmetric polynomials. Similarly, in $P_{\nu+\alpha_i, \nu}$, we have the identities

$$e_r(\nu + \alpha_i; i+1) = \sum_{s=0}^r (-1)^s X_{k_i+1}^s e_{r-s}(\nu; i+1). \quad (5.16)$$

$$e_r(\nu; i) = \sum_{s=0}^r (-1)^s X_{k_i+1}^s e_{r-s}(\nu + \alpha_i; i), \quad (5.17)$$

$$e_r(\nu; i+1) = X_{k_i+1} e_{r-1}(\nu + \alpha_i; i+1) + e_r(\nu + \alpha_i; i+1), \quad (5.18)$$

$$e_r(\nu + \alpha_i; i) = X_{k_i+1} e_{r-1}(\nu; i) + e_r(\nu; i), \quad (5.19)$$

$$h_r(\nu + \alpha_i; i+1) = h_r(\nu; i+1) - X_{k_i+1} h_{r-1}(\nu; i+1), \quad (5.20)$$

$$h_r(\nu; i) = h_r(\nu + \alpha_i; i) - X_{k_i+1} h_{r-1}(\nu + \alpha_i; i), \quad (5.21)$$

$$h_r(\nu; i+1) = \sum_{s=0}^r X_{k_i+1}^s h_{r-s}(\nu + \alpha_i; i+1), \quad (5.22)$$

$$h_r(\nu + \alpha_i; i) = \sum_{s=0}^r X_{k_i+1}^s h_{r-s}(\nu; i). \quad (5.23)$$

The following identities will also be useful:

$$X_{k_i}^r = \sum_{l=0}^r (-1)^l h_{r-l}(\nu - \alpha_i; i+1) e_l(\nu; i+1), \quad (5.24)$$

$$X_{k_i}^r = \sum_{l=0}^r (-1)^l e_l(\nu - \alpha_i; i) h_{r-l}(\nu; i), \quad (5.25)$$

$$X_{k_{i+1}}^r = \sum_{l=0}^r (-1)^l e_l(\nu + \alpha_i; i+1) h_{r-l}(\nu; i+1), \quad (5.26)$$

$$X_{k_{i+1}}^r = \sum_{l=0}^r (-1)^{r-l} h_l(\nu + \alpha_i; i) e_{r-l}(\nu; i). \quad (5.27)$$

We can extend the definition of the bimodule $P_{\nu+\alpha_i, \nu}$ by letting

$$P_{\nu+\alpha_i \pm \alpha_j, \nu} = P_{\nu+\alpha_i \pm \alpha_j, \nu+\alpha_i} \otimes_{P_{\nu+\alpha_i}} P_{\nu+\alpha_i, \nu},$$

and hence, inductively define the bimodule $P_{\nu+\sum m_i \alpha_i, \nu}$ for $m_i \in \mathbb{Z}$. Note that these bimodules are graded, and by $P_{\nu+\alpha_i, \nu}\langle s \rangle$ we will mean the degree shift of $P_{\nu+\alpha_i, \nu}$ by $s \in \mathbb{Z}$.

5.2 The 2-functor $\mathcal{U} \rightarrow \mathbf{Pol}_N$

Let \mathbf{Pol}_N be the additive 2-category, in which

- objects are P_ν for all $\nu \in \mathcal{P}(n, N)$,
- 1-morphisms between the objects P_ν and $P_{\nu+\sum m_i \alpha_i}$ are the finite direct sums of bimodules $P_{\nu+\sum m_i \alpha_i, \nu}$,
- 2-morphisms are matrices of bimodule homomorphisms.

The next theorem is due to Khovanov and Lauda [35], however, we replace their \mathbf{EqFlag}_N^* 2-category with the 2-category \mathbf{Pol}_N . While the 2-category \mathbf{EqFlag}_N^* is presented in terms of $GL_{\mathbb{C}}(n)$ -equivariant cohomology rings of partial flag varieties in [35], we can pass to \mathbf{Pol}_N by identifying the Chern classes with elementary symmetric polynomials.

Theorem 5.2.1. [35] *There is a 2-representation $\Theta_N: \mathcal{U} \rightarrow \mathbf{Pol}_N$, which is defined as follows:*

- On objects

$$\bar{\nu} \mapsto \begin{cases} P_\nu & \text{if } \nu \in \mathcal{P}(n, N) \text{ and } \bar{\nu}_i = \nu_i - \nu_{i+1} \text{ for each } i \in I, \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

- On 1-morphisms

$$\mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}}\langle t \rangle \mapsto P_\nu\langle t \rangle,$$

$$\mathcal{E}_i \mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}}\langle t \rangle \mapsto P_{\nu+\alpha_i, \nu}\langle t \rangle,$$

$$\mathcal{F}_i \mathbf{1}_{\bar{\nu}}\langle t \rangle \mapsto P_{\nu-\alpha_i, \nu}\langle t \rangle.$$

- On 2-morphisms

$$\Theta_N \left(i \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \searrow \end{array} \bar{\nu} \right) : \begin{cases} P_\nu & \longrightarrow (P_{\nu, \nu+\alpha_i} \otimes_{P_{\nu+\alpha_i}} P_{\nu+\alpha_i, \nu}) \langle 2\nu_i \rangle, \\ 1 & \mapsto c_{\bar{\nu}, i}^{-1} \sum_{r=0}^{\nu_i} (-1)^{\nu_i-r} X_{k_{i+1}}^r \otimes e_{\nu_i-r}(\nu; i), \end{cases}$$

$$\Theta_N \left(i \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \nearrow \end{array} \bar{\nu} \right) : \begin{cases} P_\nu & \longrightarrow P_{\nu, \nu-\alpha_i} \otimes_{P_{\nu-\alpha_i}} P_{\nu-\alpha_i, \nu} \langle 2\nu_{i+1} \rangle, \\ 1 & \mapsto \sum_{r=0}^{\nu_{i+1}} (-1)^{\nu_{i+1}-r} X_{k_i}^r \otimes e_{\nu_{i+1}-r}(\nu; i+1), \end{cases}$$

$$\Theta_N \left(i \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \searrow \end{array} \bar{\nu} \right) : \begin{cases} P_{\nu, \nu+\alpha_i} \otimes_{P_{\nu+\alpha_i}} P_{\nu+\alpha_i, \nu} & \longrightarrow P_\nu \langle 2(1-\nu_{i+1}) \rangle, \\ X_{k_{i+1}}^{r_1} \otimes X_{k_{i+1}}^{r_2} & \mapsto h_{r_1+r_2+1-\nu_{i+1}}(\nu; i+1), \end{cases}$$

$$\Theta_N \left(i \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \nearrow \end{array} \bar{\nu} \right) : \begin{cases} P_{\nu, \nu-\alpha_i} \otimes_{P_{\nu-\alpha_i}} P_{\nu-\alpha_i, \nu} & \longrightarrow P_\nu \langle 2(1-\nu_i) \rangle, \\ X_{k_i}^{r_1} \otimes X_{k_i}^{r_2} & \mapsto c_{i, \bar{\nu}} h_{r_1+r_2+1-\nu_i}(\nu; i), \end{cases}$$

$$\Theta_N \left(\begin{array}{c} | \\ \nu + \alpha_i \quad \bullet^s \\ | \\ i \end{array} \bar{\nu} \right) : \begin{cases} P_{\nu+\alpha_i, \nu} \rightarrow P_{\nu+\alpha_i, \nu} \langle 2s \rangle, \\ X_{k_i+1}^r \mapsto X_{k_i+1}^{r+s}, \quad s \geq 0, \end{cases}$$

$$\Theta_N \left(\begin{array}{c} | \\ \nu - \alpha_i \quad \bullet^s \\ | \\ i \end{array} \bar{\nu} \right) : \begin{cases} P_{\nu-\alpha_i, \nu} \rightarrow P_{\nu-\alpha_i, \nu} \langle 2s \rangle, \\ X_{k_i}^r \mapsto X_{k_i}^{r+s}, \quad s \geq 0, \end{cases}$$

$$\Theta_N \left(\begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ i \quad \searrow \\ \bar{\nu} \end{array} \right) : P_{\nu+\alpha_i+\alpha_j, \nu+\alpha_j} \otimes_{P_{\nu+\alpha_j}} P_{\nu+\alpha_j, \nu} \rightarrow P_{\nu+\alpha_i+\alpha_j, \nu+\alpha_i} \otimes_{P_{\nu+\alpha_i}} P_{\nu+\alpha_i, \nu} \langle -a_{ij} \rangle,$$

$$X_{k_i+1}^{r_1} \otimes X_{k_j+1}^{r_2} \mapsto \begin{cases} \sum_{f=0}^{r_1-1} X_{k_i+2}^{r_1+r_2-1-f} \otimes X_{k_i+1}^f - \sum_{g=0}^{r_2-1} X_{k_i+2}^{r_1+r_2-1-g} \otimes X_{k_i+1}^g & \text{if } a_{ij} = 2, \\ \left(t_{ij} X_{k_j+1}^{r_2} \otimes X_{k_i+1}^{r_1+1} + t_{ji} X_{k_j+1}^{r_2+1} \otimes X_{k_i+1}^{r_1} \right) \langle -1 \rangle & \text{if } i = j + 1, \\ \left(X_{k_j+1}^{r_2} \otimes X_{k_i+1}^{r_1} \right) \langle 1 \rangle & \text{if } i = j - 1, \\ X_{k_j+1}^{r_2} \otimes X_{k_i+1}^{r_1} & \text{if } a_{ij} = 0, \end{cases}$$

$$\Theta_N \left(\begin{array}{c} \searrow \\ i \quad \nearrow \\ \bar{\nu} \end{array} \right) : P_{\nu-\alpha_i-\alpha_j, \nu-\alpha_j} \otimes_{P_{\nu-\alpha_j}} P_{\nu-\alpha_j, \nu} \rightarrow P_{\nu-\alpha_i-\alpha_j, \nu-\alpha_i} \otimes_{P_{\nu-\alpha_i}} P_{\nu-\alpha_i, \nu} \langle -a_{ij} \rangle,$$

$$X_{k_i}^{r_1} \otimes X_{k_j}^{r_2} \mapsto \begin{cases} \sum_{f=0}^{r_2-1} X_{k_i-1}^{r_1+r_2-1-f} \otimes X_{k_i}^f - \sum_{g=0}^{r_1-1} X_{k_i-1}^{r_1+r_2-1-g} \otimes X_{k_i}^g & \text{if } a_{ij} = 2, \\ t_{ji} \left(X_{k_j}^{r_2} \otimes X_{k_i}^{r_1} \right) \langle -1 \rangle & \text{if } i = j + 1, \\ t_{ji} \left(X_{k_j}^{r_2+1} \otimes X_{k_i}^{r_1} + X_{k_j}^{r_2} \otimes X_{k_i}^{r_1+1} \right) \langle 1 \rangle & \text{if } i = j - 1, \\ X_{k_j}^{r_2} \otimes X_{k_i}^{r_1} & \text{if } a_{ij} = 0. \end{cases}$$

Proof. Theorem is proved in [35]. We, however, show a way to do it using symmetric polynomials instead of Chern classes. Clearly, the 2-functor Θ_N preserves the degrees of 2-morphisms. We need to check that Φ preserves the relations between 2-morphisms.

- Biadjointness property of 1-morphisms can be shown the following way:

$$\begin{aligned}
& \Theta_N \left(\begin{array}{c} \overline{\nu + \alpha_i} \quad \bar{\nu} \\ \uparrow \quad \downarrow \\ i \end{array} \right) (1) = \\
& = \Theta_N \left(\begin{array}{c} \overline{\nu + \alpha_i} \\ \uparrow \quad \downarrow \\ i \end{array} \right) \left(c_{\bar{\nu}, i}^{-1} \sum_{l=0}^{\nu_i} (-1)^{\nu_i - l} X_{k_i+1}^s \otimes X_{k_i+1}^l \otimes e_{\nu_i - l}(\nu; i) \right) = \\
& = X_{k_i+1}^s \sum_{l=0}^{\nu_i} (-1)^{\nu_i - l} h_{l - \nu_i}(\nu + \alpha_i; i) e_{\nu_i - l}(\nu; i) = X_{k_i+1}^s = \Theta_N \left(\begin{array}{c} \bullet^s \\ \overline{\nu + \alpha_i} \quad \bar{\nu} \\ \uparrow \\ i \end{array} \right) (1).
\end{aligned}$$

- The following relations are easy computations obtained by applying the images of crossings twice:

$$\begin{aligned}
& \Theta_N \left(\begin{array}{c} \uparrow \quad \uparrow \\ \downarrow \quad \downarrow \\ i \quad j \end{array} \right) (X_{k_i+1}^{r_1} \otimes X_{k_j+1}^{r_2}) = \\
& = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } a_{ij} = 2, \\ t_{ij}(X_{k_i+1}^{r_1} \otimes X_{k_j+1}^{r_2}) & \text{if } a_{ij} = 0, \\ t_{ij}(X_{k_i+1}^{r_1+1} \otimes X_{k_j+1}^{r_2}) + t_{ji}(X_{k_i+1}^{r_1} \otimes X_{k_j+1}^{r_2+1}) & \text{if } a_{ij} = -1, \end{cases}
\end{aligned}$$

- We only show the following relation for $i = j + 1$:

$$\Theta_N \left(\begin{array}{c} \uparrow \quad \uparrow \quad \uparrow \\ \downarrow \quad \downarrow \quad \downarrow \\ i \quad j \quad i \end{array} \right) - \Theta_N \left(\begin{array}{c} \uparrow \quad \uparrow \quad \uparrow \\ \downarrow \quad \downarrow \quad \downarrow \\ i \quad j \quad i \end{array} \right) = t_{ij} \Theta_N \left(\begin{array}{c} \uparrow \quad \uparrow \quad \uparrow \\ \downarrow \quad \downarrow \quad \downarrow \\ i \quad j \quad i \end{array} \right). \quad (5.28)$$

We prove this relation by applying the 2-morphisms on the both sides of the equalities on $X_{k_i+2}^{r_3} \otimes X_{k_j+1}^{r_2} \otimes X_{k_i+1}^{r_1}$. Since

$$X_{k_i+2}^{r_3} \otimes X_{k_j+1}^{r_2} \otimes X_{k_i+1}^{r_1} = \Theta_N \left(\begin{array}{c} \uparrow \quad \uparrow \quad \uparrow \\ \bullet r_3 \bullet r_2 \bullet r_1 \\ \downarrow \quad \downarrow \quad \downarrow \\ i \quad j \quad i \end{array} \right) (1 \otimes 1 \otimes 1)$$

holds, without loss of generality we can take $r_1 = r_2 = r_3 = 0$:

$$\begin{aligned} \Theta_N \left(\begin{array}{c} \uparrow \quad \uparrow \quad \uparrow \\ \downarrow \quad \downarrow \quad \downarrow \\ i \quad j \quad i \end{array} \right) (1 \otimes 1 \otimes 1) &= \Theta_N \left(\begin{array}{c} \uparrow \quad \uparrow \quad \uparrow \\ \downarrow \quad \downarrow \quad \downarrow \\ i \quad j \quad i \end{array} \right) (t_{ij} 1 \otimes X_{k_i+2} \otimes 1 + t_{ji} X_{k_j+1} \otimes 1 \otimes 1) \langle 1 \rangle = \\ &= \Theta_N \left(\begin{array}{c} \uparrow \quad \uparrow \\ \downarrow \quad \downarrow \\ j \quad i \end{array} \right) \left(\begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ i \end{array} \right) (t_{ij} 1 \otimes 1 \otimes 1) \langle 1 \rangle = t_{ij} 1 \otimes 1 \otimes 1, \\ &\quad \Theta_N \left(\begin{array}{c} \uparrow \quad \uparrow \quad \uparrow \\ \downarrow \quad \downarrow \quad \downarrow \\ i \quad j \quad i \end{array} \right) (1 \otimes 1 \otimes 1) = 0. \end{aligned}$$

We leave the remaining relations for the readers to check. They all follow from the identities (5.8) to (5.23) via direct computations. \square

Under the 2-functor Θ_N , the images of the clockwise and counterclockwise bubbles are:

$$\Theta_N \left(\begin{array}{c} \bar{\nu} \\ \downarrow \\ i \\ \uparrow \\ \bar{\nu}_i - 1 + r \end{array} \right), \Theta_N \left(\begin{array}{c} \bar{\nu} \\ \downarrow \\ i \\ \uparrow \\ -\bar{\nu}_i - 1 + r \end{array} \right) : P_\nu \rightarrow P_\nu,$$

$$\Theta_N \left(\begin{array}{c} \bar{\nu} \\ \downarrow \\ i \\ \uparrow \\ \bar{\nu}_i - 1 + r \end{array} \right) (1) = c_{i, \bar{\nu}} \sum_{l=0}^r (-1)^l e_l(\nu; i+1) h_{r-l}(\nu; i), \quad (5.29)$$

$$\Theta_N \left(\begin{array}{c} \bar{\nu} \\ \downarrow \\ i \\ \uparrow \\ -\bar{\nu}_i - 1 + r \end{array} \right) (1) = c_{i, \bar{\nu}}^{-1} \sum_{l=0}^r (-1)^l e_l(\nu; i) h_{r-l}(\nu; i+1). \quad (5.30)$$

If we replace the ring P_ν with ring $C_\nu := P_\nu/Sym_N$ for each $\nu \in \Lambda(n, N)$, we can still define a 2-category \mathbf{CPol}_N with objects C_ν and a 2-functor $\Psi: \mathcal{U} \rightarrow \mathbf{CPol}_N$ in an entirely similar way. Khovanov-Lauda [35] construct a 2-category \mathbf{Flag}_N^* using the ordinary cohomology of partial flag varieties to show the non-degeneracy of \mathcal{U} . The isomorphism between \mathbf{EqFlag}_N^* and \mathbf{Pol}_N descends to a isomorphism between \mathbf{Flag}_N^* and \mathbf{CPol}_N . Taking the quotients of the objects in \mathbf{Pol}_N by Sym_N corresponds to imposing Grassmannian relation on the objects of \mathbf{EqFlag}_N^* . The 2-morphisms in \mathbf{CPol}_N are finite-dimensional, and we have $C_{\bar{\lambda}_0} := P_{\bar{\lambda}_0}/Sym_N \simeq \mathbb{C}$. The following result is also due to Khovanov-Lauda [35], Theorem 6.14.

Theorem 5.2.2. *The 2-categories \mathbf{Pol}_N and \mathbf{CPol}_N categorify the finite-dimensional, simple \mathfrak{sl}_n representation $V(\bar{\lambda}_0)$.*

It is easy to check that both \mathbf{Pol}_N and \mathbf{CPol}_N are integrable. Recall the two categorifications of $V(\bar{\lambda}_0)$ – the categories of graded, finitely generated, projective modules $\check{R}^{\bar{\lambda}}\text{-pMod}$ and $R^{\bar{\lambda}}\text{-pMod}$ over the deformed cyclotomic KLR algebra $\check{R}^{\bar{\lambda}}$ and the cyclotomic KLR algebra $R^{\bar{\lambda}}$ respectively. By Theorem 4.2.5, they carry a universality property which can be depicted in the following commuting diagrams:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{U} & \xrightarrow{\Theta_N} & \mathbf{Pol}_N \\ & \searrow & \uparrow \Theta'_N \\ & & \check{R}^{\bar{\lambda}_0}\text{-pMod} \end{array}, \quad \begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{U} & \xrightarrow{\Psi_N} & \mathbf{CPol}_N \\ & \searrow & \uparrow \Psi'_N \\ & & R^{\bar{\lambda}_0}\text{-pMod} \end{array},$$

where Θ'_N and Ψ'_N are strongly equivariant 2-functors. The 2-category \mathbf{CPol}_N is a minimal categorification since $C_{\bar{\lambda}_0} \simeq \mathbb{C}$, i.e., Ψ'_N is a strongly equivariant equivalence.

5.3 $Z(\mathbf{Pol}_N)$ as a current algebra module

The 2-functor $\Theta_N: \mathcal{U} \rightarrow \mathbf{Pol}_N$ induces a \mathbb{C} -linear functor $\text{Tr } \Theta_N: \text{Tr } \mathcal{U} \rightarrow \text{Tr } \mathbf{Pol}_N$. The center of the object P_ν of the 2-category \mathbf{Pol}_N is isomorphic to P_ν , since P_ν is a commutative ring and acts on itself by multiplication. Composing the linear isomorphism $\rho: \dot{\mathbf{U}}(\mathfrak{sl}_n[t]) \rightarrow \text{Tr } \mathcal{U}$ with the functor $\text{Tr } \Theta_N: \text{Tr } \mathcal{U} \rightarrow \text{Tr } \mathbf{Pol}_N$ gives the current algebra module structure on $\bigoplus_{\nu \in \mathcal{P}(n, N)} P_\nu$, where each ring P_ν corresponds to the \mathfrak{sl}_n weight space $\bar{\nu}$. Recall the definition of the generators $F_{i,j}, E_{i,j}, H_{i,j}$ of $\text{Tr } \mathcal{U}$ in the equation (2.39). In what follows, we will define the action of $\text{Tr } \mathbf{Pol}_N$ on the center of objects $\bigoplus_{\nu \in \mathcal{P}(n, N)} P_\nu$ to be the images of the trace maps, defined in (2.40) to (2.42), under the functor Θ_N :

$$F_{i,j} = \text{Tr } \Theta_N(F_{i,j}): P_\nu \rightarrow P_{\nu - \alpha_i},$$

$$\mathbf{E}_{i,j} = \text{Tr } \Theta_N(\mathbf{E}_{i,j}): P_\nu \rightarrow P_{\nu+\alpha_i},$$

$$\mathbf{H}_{i,j} = \text{Tr } \Theta_N(\mathbf{H}_{i,j}): P_\nu \rightarrow P_\nu,$$

for all $i \in I$ and $j \geq 0$. The next theorem defines the current algebra action and generalizes Brundan's formula ([13], Theorem 3.4) for the action of \mathfrak{sl}_n .

Theorem 5.3.1. 1. The map $\mathbf{F}_{i,j}: P_\nu \rightarrow P_{\nu-\alpha_i}$ is the $P_{\nu-\alpha_i}$ -module homomorphism such that

$$\mathbf{F}_{i,j}(X_{k_i}^m) = c_{i,\bar{\nu}}^{-1} \sum_{l=0}^{\nu_i-1} (-1)^l e_l(\nu - \alpha_i; i) h_{m+j+\bar{\nu}_i-1-l}(\nu - \alpha_i; i+1).$$

2. The map $\mathbf{E}_{i,j}: P_\nu \rightarrow P_{\nu+\alpha_i}$ is the $P_{\nu+\alpha_i}$ -module homomorphism such that

$$\mathbf{E}_{i,j}(X_{k_i+1}^m) = c_{i,\bar{\nu}} \sum_{l=0}^{\nu_{i+1}-1} (-1)^l e_l(\nu + \alpha_i; i+1) h_{m+j-\bar{\nu}_i-1-l}(\nu + \alpha_i; i).$$

3. The map $\mathbf{H}_{i,j}: P_\nu \rightarrow P_\nu$ is the multiplication by $(-1)^j(p_j(\nu; i+1) - p_j(\nu; i))$ if $j > 0$, and by $\bar{\nu}_i$ if $j = 0$.

Proof.

1. We compute the action of $\mathbf{F}_{i,j}$ on $p \in P_\nu$. To do this, we first apply the map

$$\Theta_N \left(\begin{array}{c} \downarrow \bar{\nu} \downarrow \\ \hline \nu - \alpha_i \end{array} \right) \text{ on } p :$$

$$\Theta_N \left(\begin{array}{c} \downarrow \bar{\nu} \downarrow \\ \hline \nu - \alpha_i \end{array} \right) (p) = c_{i,\bar{\nu}-\alpha_i}^{-1} \sum_{r=0}^{\nu_i-1} (-1)^r e_r(\nu - \alpha_i; i) p \otimes X_{k_i}^{\nu_i-1-r} \in P_{\nu-\alpha_i, \nu} \otimes_{P_\nu} P_{\nu, \nu-\alpha_i}.$$

Every element $p \in P_{\nu, \nu}$ can be written as $p = \sum_{m=0}^{\nu_{i+1}} p'_m X_{k_i}^m$ for some elements $p'_m \in P_{\nu-\alpha_i}$.

Now we apply the cap $\Theta_N \left(\begin{array}{c} j \\ \curvearrowright \bar{\nu} - \alpha_i \\ \curvearrowright \end{array} \right) :$

$$\Theta_N \left(\begin{array}{c} j \\ \curvearrowright \bar{\nu} - \alpha_i \\ \curvearrowright \end{array} \right) \left(c_{i,\bar{\nu}-\alpha_i}^{-1} \sum_{m=0}^{\nu_{i+1}} p'_m \sum_{l=0}^{\nu_i-1} (-1)^l e_l(\nu - \alpha_i; i) X_{k_i}^m \otimes X_{k_i}^{j+\nu_i-1-l} \right) =$$

$$= c_{i,\bar{\nu}}^{-1} \sum_{m=0}^{\nu_{i+1}} p'_m \sum_{l=0}^{\nu_i-1} (-1)^l e_l(\nu - \alpha_i; i) h_{m+j+\bar{\nu}_i-1-l}(\nu - \alpha_i; i+1).$$

Thus,

$$F_{i,j}(X_{k_i}^m) = c_{i,\bar{\nu}}^{-1} \sum_{l=0}^{\nu_i-1} (-1)^l e_l(\nu - \alpha_i; i) h_{m+j+\bar{\nu}_i-1-l}(\nu - \alpha_i; i+1).$$

2. Similarly, the action of the $E_{i,j}$ on $p \in P_\nu$ is defined by closing it with a cup and a cup consecutively, and hence obtaining an element of $P_{\nu+\alpha_i}$. As an element of $P_{\nu,\nu+\alpha_i}$, we can write $p = \sum_{m=0}^{\nu_{i+1}-1} p'_m X_{k_{i+1}}^m$ for some elements $p'_m \in P_{\nu+\alpha_i}$. Then we have

$$\Theta_N \left(i \begin{array}{c} \overbrace{\quad}^{\bar{\nu}} \\ \underbrace{\quad}_{\nu + \alpha_i} \end{array} \right) (p) = \sum_{r=0}^{\nu_{i+1}-1} (-1)^l e_l(\nu + \alpha_i; i+1) p \otimes X_{k_i}^{\nu_{i+1}-1-l} =$$

$$= \sum_{m=0}^{\nu_{i+1}-1} p'_m \sum_{l=0}^{\nu_{i+1}-1} (-1)^l e_l(\nu + \alpha_i; i+1) X_{k_{i+1}}^m \otimes X_{k_{i+1}}^{\nu_{i+1}-1-l} \in P_{\nu+\alpha_i,\nu} \otimes_{P_\nu} P_{\nu,\nu+\alpha_i}.$$

We close the diagram by applying the cap:

$$\Theta_N \left(i \begin{array}{c} \overbrace{\quad}^j \\ \underbrace{\quad}_{\nu + \alpha_i} \end{array} \right) \left(\sum_{m=0}^{\nu_{i+1}-1} p'_m \sum_{l=0}^{\nu_{i+1}-1} (-1)^l e_l(\nu + \alpha_i; i+1) X_{k_{i+1}}^m \otimes X_{k_{i+1}}^{j+\nu_{i+1}-1-l} \right) =$$

$$= c_{i,\overline{\nu+\alpha_i}} \sum_{m=0}^{\nu_{i+1}-1} p'_m \sum_{l=0}^{\nu_{i+1}-1} (-1)^l e_l(\nu + \alpha_i; i+1) h_{m+j-\bar{\nu}_i-1-l}(\nu + \alpha_i; i).$$

Thus, we get

$$E_{i,j}(X_{k_i}^m) = c_{i,\bar{\nu}} \sum_{l=0}^{\nu_{i+1}-1} (-1)^l e_l(\nu + \alpha_i; i+1) h_{m+j-\bar{\nu}_i-1-l}(\nu + \alpha_i; i).$$

3. The map $H_{i,j}$, $j \geq 1$ is a multiplication by $\text{Tr } \Theta_N(\pi_{i,j}(\bar{\nu}))$, where

$$\pi_{i,j}(\bar{\nu}) = \sum_{l=0}^j (l+1) \begin{array}{c} \bar{\nu} \\ \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \circlearrowright \end{array} \\ \spadesuit_{+l} \quad \spadesuit_{+j-l} \end{array} . \quad (5.31)$$

We define the following generating functions:

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{array}{c} \bar{\nu} \\ \circlearrowleft \\ \bullet \end{array} (t) &= \sum_{l=0}^{\infty} \begin{array}{c} \bar{\nu} \\ \circlearrowleft \\ \bullet \end{array} (t)_{-\bar{\nu}_i-1+l} t^l, & \begin{array}{c} \bar{\nu} \\ \circlearrowleft \\ \bullet \end{array} (t) &= \sum_{l=0}^{\infty} \begin{array}{c} \bar{\nu} \\ \circlearrowleft \\ \bullet \end{array} (t)_{\bar{\nu}_i-1+l} t^l, & E(\nu; i)(t) &= \sum_{l=0}^{\nu_i} e_l(\nu; i) t^l, \\ H(\nu; i)(t) &= \sum_{l=0}^{\infty} h_l(\nu; i) t^l, & p(\nu; i)(t) &= \sum_{l=0}^{\infty} p_l(\nu; i) t^{l-1}, & \pi_i(\bar{\nu})(t) &= \sum_{l=0}^{\infty} \pi_{i,l}(\bar{\nu}) t^{l-1}. \end{aligned}$$

Then the equation 5.31 can be written as

$$\pi_i(\bar{\nu})(t) = \left(\begin{array}{c} \bar{\nu} \\ \circlearrowleft \\ \bullet \end{array} (t) \right)' \begin{array}{c} \bar{\nu} \\ \circlearrowleft \\ \bullet \end{array} (t) = \frac{\left(\begin{array}{c} \bar{\nu} \\ \circlearrowleft \\ \bullet \end{array} (t) \right)'}{\begin{array}{c} \bar{\nu} \\ \circlearrowleft \\ \bullet \end{array} (t)} = \left(\log \begin{array}{c} \bar{\nu} \\ \circlearrowleft \\ \bullet \end{array} (t) \right)'. \quad (5.32)$$

The equation (5.29) implies

$$\mathrm{Tr} \Theta_N \left(\begin{array}{c} \bar{\nu} \\ \circlearrowleft \\ \bullet \end{array} (t) \right) = H(\nu; i)(-t) E(\nu; i+1)(t) = \frac{E(\nu; i+1)(t)}{E(\nu; i)(t)},$$

so we have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{Tr} \Theta_N (\pi_i(\bar{\nu})(t)) &= \left(\log \frac{E(\nu; i)(t)}{E(\nu; i+1)(t)} \right)' = \\ &= (\log E(\nu; i+1)(t))' - (\log E(\nu; i)(t))' = p(\nu; i+1)(-t) - p(\nu; i)(-t). \end{aligned} \quad (5.33)$$

The last equality in the equation (5.33) is given on page 23 in [43]. Thus, $\mathrm{Tr} \Theta_N (\pi_{i,j}(\bar{\nu})) = (-1)^j (p_j(\nu; i+1) - p_j(\nu; i))$. \square

5.4 The coinvariant algebra C_{ν}^{λ}

Fix a partition $\lambda \in \mathcal{P}^+(n, N)$. Let $\nu \in \mathcal{P}(n, N)$ and I_{ν}^{λ} be the ideal of P_{ν} generated by

$$\left\{ h_r(\nu; i_1, \dots, i_m) \mid \begin{array}{l} 1 \leq m \leq n, \quad 1 \leq i_1 < \dots < i_m \leq n, \\ r > \lambda_1 + \dots + \lambda_m - \nu_{i_1} - \dots - \nu_{i_m} \end{array} \right\}. \quad (5.34)$$

We will need the following statement for the special case $\lambda_0 = (N, 0, \dots, 0) \in \mathcal{P}^+(n, N)$.

Proposition 5.4.1. *If $\lambda_0 = (N, 0, \dots, 0)$, then $I_{\nu}^{\lambda_0} = \mathrm{Sym}_N$.*

Proof. We have

$$I_\nu^{\lambda_0} = \left\langle h_r(\nu; i_1, \dots, i_m) \mid \begin{array}{l} 1 \leq m \leq n, \ 1 \leq i_1 < \dots < i_m \leq n, \\ r > N - (\nu_{i_1} + \dots + \nu_{i_m}) \end{array} \right\rangle.$$

Since $Sym_N = \langle h_r(\nu; 1, 2, \dots, n) \mid r > 0 \rangle$, we have $Sym_N \subseteq I_\nu^{\lambda_0}$. To prove $I_\nu^{\lambda_0} \subseteq Sym_N$, let $h_r(\nu; i_1, \dots, i_m)$ be a generator of $I_\nu^{\lambda_0}$ with $r > N - (\nu_{i_1} + \dots + \nu_{i_m})$. Define

$$\{j_1, j_2, \dots, j_{n-m}\} = \{1, 2, \dots, n\} \setminus \{i_1, i_2, \dots, i_m\}.$$

to be the ordered set. Then according to (5.6), we have

$$\begin{aligned} h_r(\nu; i_1, \dots, i_m) &= \sum_{s=0}^r (-1)^{r-s} e_{r-s}(\nu; j_1, \dots, j_{n-m}) h_s(\nu; 1, 2, \dots, n) = \\ &= (-1)^r e_r(\nu; j_1, \dots, j_{n-m}) + \sum_{s=1}^r (-1)^{r-s} e_{r-s}(\nu; j_1, \dots, j_{n-m}) h_s(\nu; 1, 2, \dots, n). \end{aligned}$$

since $e_r(\nu; j_1, \dots, j_{n-m})$ is an elementary symmetric polynomial in $N - (\nu_{i_1} + \dots + \nu_{i_m})$ variables, it is zero when $r > N - (\nu_{i_1} + \dots + \nu_{i_m})$. Thus, $I_\nu^{\lambda_0} \subseteq Sym_N$ holds. \square

Let $C_\nu^\lambda = P_\nu / I_\nu^\lambda$. Notice that $Sym_N \subseteq I_\nu^\lambda$ holds, thus we can regard the ring C_ν^λ as a quotient of $C_\nu = C_\nu^{\lambda_0}$. Since P_ν is a finitely generated free module over Sym_N , C_ν is finite-dimensional and hence so is C_ν^λ . Notice that $C_\nu^\lambda \neq 0$ if and only if $\lambda \geq \nu$ with respect to the dominance order.

Proposition 5.4.2. *The ideal $\bigoplus_\nu I_\nu^\lambda$ of $\bigoplus_\nu P_\nu$ is invariant under the action of generators $E_{i,j}$ and $F_{i,j}$ for all $i \in I$ and $j \geq 0$.*

Proof. We will only show $E_{i,j}(I_\nu^\lambda) \subseteq I_{\nu+\alpha_i}^\lambda$, and the proof of $F_{i,j}(I_\nu^\lambda) \subseteq I_{\nu-\alpha_i}^\lambda$ will be similar. We have to show that images of all $h_r(\nu; i_1, \dots, i_m)$ under $E_{i,j}$ are in $I_{\nu+\alpha_i}^\lambda$ for all $j \geq 0$, $m \geq 1$, $1 \leq i_1 < \dots < i_m \leq n$ and $r > \lambda_1 + \dots + \lambda_m - \nu_{i_1} - \dots - \nu_{i_m}$. We proceed with the case distinction.

1. If $i \in \{i_1, \dots, i_m\}$ and $i+1 \in \{i_1, \dots, i_m\}$, then $h_r(\nu; i_1, \dots, i_m) = h_r(\nu + \alpha_i; i_1, \dots, i_m)$ holds. In this case, we have

$$E_{i,j}(h_r(\nu; i_1, \dots, i_m)) = h_r(\nu + \alpha_i; i_1, \dots, i_m) E_{i,j}(1),$$

which belongs to $I_{\nu+\alpha_i}^\lambda$. The same is true when $i \notin \{i_1, \dots, i_m\}$ and $i+1 \notin \{i_1, \dots, i_m\}$ hold simultaneously.

2. We consider the case $i \in \{i_1, \dots, i_m\}$ and $i+1 \notin \{i_1, \dots, i_m\}$.

We have the identity (5.21):

$$h_r(\nu; i_1, \dots, i_m) = h_r(\nu + \alpha_i; i_1, \dots, i_m) - X_{k_i+1} h_{r-1}(\nu + \alpha_i; i_1, \dots, i_m).$$

Since $r-1 > \lambda_1 + \dots + \lambda_m - (\nu + \alpha_i)_{i_1} - \dots - (\nu + \alpha_i)_{i_m} = \lambda_1 + \dots + \lambda_m - \nu_{i_1} - \dots - \nu_{i_m} - 1$, the element

$$h_r(\nu + \alpha_i; i_1, \dots, i_m) E_{i,j}(1) - h_{r-1}(\nu + \alpha_i; i_1, \dots, i_m) E_{i,j}(X_{k_i+1})$$

belongs to $I_{\nu+\alpha_i}^\lambda$.

3. Finally suppose that $i \notin \{i_1, \dots, i_m\}$ and $i+1 = i_m$. By (5.22), we have that

$$h_r(\nu; i_1, \dots, i+1) = \sum_{l=0}^r h_l(\nu + \alpha_i; i_1, \dots, i+1) X_{k_i+1}^{r-l}$$

Applying $E_{i,j}$ on $h_r(\nu; i_1, \dots, i+1)$, we get the element

$$c_{i,\bar{\nu}} \sum_{s=0}^{\nu_{i+1}-1} (-1)^s e_s(\nu + \alpha_i; i+1) \sum_{l=0}^r h_{r-l+j-\bar{\nu}_i-1-s}(\nu + \alpha_i; i) h_l(\nu + \alpha_i; i_1, \dots, i+1). \quad (5.35)$$

Notice that since $r > \lambda_1 + \dots + \lambda_m - \nu_{i_1} - \dots - \nu_{i_m} = \lambda_1 + \dots + \lambda_m - (\nu + \alpha_i)_{i_1} - \dots - (\nu + \alpha_i)_{i_m} - 1$, the second summand in the identity

$$\begin{aligned} h_{r+j-\bar{\nu}_i-1-s}(\nu + \alpha_i; i_1, \dots, i+1, i) &= \sum_{l=0}^r h_{r-l+j-\bar{\nu}_i-1-s}(\nu + \alpha_i; i) h_l(\nu + \alpha_i; i_1, \dots, i+1) \\ &+ \sum_{l=r+1}^{r+j-\bar{\nu}_i-1-s} h_{r-l+j-\bar{\nu}_i-1-s}(\nu + \alpha_i; i) h_l(\nu + \alpha_i; i_1, \dots, i+1) \end{aligned}$$

is in $I_{\nu+\alpha_i}^\lambda$. Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} &h_{r+j-\bar{\nu}_i-1-s}(\nu + \alpha_i; i_1, \dots, i+1, i) \equiv \\ &\equiv \sum_{l=0}^r h_{r-l+j-\bar{\nu}_i-1-s}(\nu + \alpha_i; i) h_l(\nu + \alpha_i; i_1, \dots, i+1) \pmod{I_{\nu+\alpha_i}^\lambda}. \end{aligned}$$

We can insert this equivalence in the element (5.4.4). To finish the proof, we need to check that the element

$$c_{i,\bar{\nu}} \sum_{s=0}^{\nu_{i+1}-1} (-1)^s e_s(\nu + \alpha_i; i+1) h_{r+j-\bar{\nu}_i-1-s}(\nu + \alpha_i; i_1, \dots, i+1, i)$$

also belongs to $I_{\nu+\alpha_i}^\lambda$. Another polynomial identity shows that it is equal to $c_{i,\bar{\nu}} h_{r+j-\bar{\nu}_i-1}(\nu + \alpha_i; i_1, \dots, i_{m-1}, i)$, which is an element of $I_{\nu+\alpha_i}^\lambda$, since $r+j-\bar{\nu}_i-1 > \lambda_1 + \dots + \lambda_m - (\nu + \alpha_i)_{i_1} - \dots - (\nu + \alpha_i)_{i_{m-1}} - (\nu + \alpha_i)_{i+1}$. \square

The proof of Proposition 5.4.2 is a generalization of Lemma 4.1 of Brundan [13] for the j parameter. This proposition implies the following statement.

Corollary 5.4.3. *The ring $\bigoplus_\nu C_\nu^\lambda$ is a finite-dimensional graded current algebra module with the highest weight $\bar{\lambda} = (\lambda_1 - \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_{n-1} - \lambda_n)$.*

The current algebra action on $\bigoplus_\nu P_\nu$ descends to $\bigoplus_\nu C_\nu^\lambda$. In other words, the following diagrams commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} P_\nu & \xrightarrow{E_{i,j}} & P_{\nu+\alpha_i} & & P_\nu & \xrightarrow{F_{i,j}} & P_{\nu-\alpha_i} \\ \downarrow p & & \downarrow p' & & \downarrow p & & \downarrow p'' \\ C_\nu^\lambda & \xrightarrow{E_{i,j}} & C_{\nu+\alpha_i}^\lambda & & C_\nu^\lambda & \xrightarrow{F_{i,j}} & C_{\nu-\alpha_i}^\lambda \end{array}$$

where p , p' and p'' are projections with kernels I_ν^λ , $I_{\nu+\alpha_i}^\lambda$ and $I_{\nu-\alpha_i}^\lambda$ respectively.

Recall that we defined an integer

$$d_\nu^\lambda = \max\{(\lambda, \lambda) - (\nu, \nu), 0\}. \quad (5.36)$$

It is easy to show that if $\lambda > \nu$ with respect to the dominance order, we have $d_\nu^\lambda > 0$. Brundan-Ostrik [17] prove that the ring C_ν^λ is isomorphic to the cohomology ring of Spaltenstein variety – the variety of partial flags of type ν which are annihilated by matrices of Jordan type λ^T .

For a graded, finite-dimensional current algebra module M , *graded composition multiplicity* of a simple \mathfrak{sl}_n -module V is the polynomial

$$\sum_{s \geq 0} [M\{2s\} : V] t^s,$$

where $[M\{2s\} : V]$ is the number of copies of V in $M\{2s\}$. Given a partition τ , the graded composition multiplicity of $V(\bar{\tau})$ in $\bigoplus_{\nu} C_{\nu}^{\lambda}$ is given by Brundan [13] via the formula

$$\sum_{r \geq 0} [\bigoplus_{\nu} C_{\nu}^{\lambda} \{d_{\nu}^{\lambda} - 2r\} : V(\bar{\tau})] t^r = K_{\tau^T, \lambda^T}(t), \quad (5.37)$$

where τ^T and λ^T are the transposes of the partitions τ , λ , and $K_{\tau^T, \lambda^T}(t)$ is the *Kostka-Foulkes polynomial*. We refer to [43], section III.6 for the definition of the Kostka-Foulkes polynomial. We will use their following property.

Proposition 5.4.4. *Let $\lambda, \mu \in \mathcal{P}^+(n, N)$ be partitions, and let $\lambda' = \lambda + (m, m, \dots, m)$, $\mu' = \mu + (m, m, \dots, m)$ for some non-negative integer m . Then the following equations hold:*

$$K_{\lambda, \mu}(t) = K_{\lambda', \mu'}(t), \quad (5.38)$$

$$K_{\mu^T, \lambda^T}(t) = K_{(\mu')^T, (\lambda')^T}(t).$$

Proof. $K_{\lambda, \mu}(t)$ is nonzero if and only if $\lambda \geq \mu$ with respect to the dominance order. Let $\alpha_i = (0, \dots, 0, 1, -1, 0, \dots, 0)$ be the i -th simple root as before, and let

$$R^+ = \{\alpha_i + \alpha_{i+1} + \dots + \alpha_j \mid 1 \leq i \leq j \leq n-1\}$$

be the set of positive roots. For any $\xi = (\xi_1, \dots, \xi_n) \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that $\sum_i \xi_i = 0$, we define the polynomial

$$P(\xi; t) = \sum_{\{m_{\alpha}\}_{\alpha \in R^+}} t^{\sum m_{\alpha} \alpha},$$

where the sum is over all families $\{m_{\alpha}\}_{\alpha \in R^+}$ of non-negative integers such that $\xi = \sum m_{\alpha} \alpha$. The polynomial $P(\xi; t)$ is nonzero if and only if $\xi = \sum_i \eta_i \alpha_i$ for some non-negative integers η_i , $1 \leq i \leq n-1$.

By example III.6.4 in [43],

$$K_{\lambda, \mu}(t) = \sum_{\sigma \in S_n} \text{sgn}(\sigma) P(\sigma(\lambda + \delta) - (\mu + \delta); t), \quad (5.39)$$

where $\delta = (n-1, n-2, \dots, 1, 0)$. The first equality in (5.38) immediately follows from (5.39).

To prove the second equality, notice that $(\lambda')^T = (\underbrace{n, \dots, n}_{m \text{ times}}, \lambda_1^T, \dots, \lambda_N^T)$, $(\mu')^T = (\underbrace{n, \dots, n}_{m \text{ times}}, \mu_1^T, \dots, \mu_N^T)$. We take S_N to be the subgroup of S_{m+N} which fixes the first

m entries, then

$$K_{(\mu')^T, (\lambda')^T}(t) = \sum_{\sigma \in S_{m+N}} \text{sgn}(\sigma) P(\sigma((\mu')^T + \delta) - ((\lambda')^T + \delta); t). \quad (5.40)$$

Notice that summand is zero if $\sigma \in S_{m+N} \setminus S_N$. Therefore, we can write (5.40) as

$$\begin{aligned} K_{(\mu')^T, (\lambda')^T}(t) &= \sum_{\sigma \in S_N} \text{sgn}(\sigma) P(\sigma((\mu')^T + \delta) - ((\lambda')^T + \delta); t) = \\ &= \sum_{\sigma \in S_N} \text{sgn}(\sigma) P(\sigma(\mu^T + \delta) - (\lambda^T + \delta); t) = K_{\mu^T, \lambda^T}(t). \end{aligned} \quad (5.41)$$

□

The graded dimension of C_ν^λ is also given by Brundan [13]:

$$\sum_{r \geq 0} \dim_{\mathbb{C}} C_\nu^\lambda \{2r\} t^r = t^{d_\nu^\lambda/2} \sum_{\tau \in \mathcal{P}^+(n, N)} K_{\tau, \nu} K_{\tau^T, \lambda^T}(t^{-1}), \quad (5.42)$$

where $K_{\tau, \nu} = K_{\tau, \nu}(1)$ denotes the Kostka number. The Kostka-Foulkes polynomial $K_{\tau, \nu}(t)$ for a composition ν is defined to be $K_{\tau, \hat{\nu}}(t)$, where $\hat{\nu}$ is the partition obtained by permuting the entries of ν .

By [5] and [56], the center $Z(R^{\bar{\lambda}})$ of the cyclotomic KLR algebra $R^{\bar{\lambda}}$ is isomorphic to the dual local Weyl module $W^*(\bar{\lambda})$. The next theorem is proved independently by Shan-Vasserot-Varagnolo [56] and Webster [60], section 3.

Theorem 5.4.5. [60] *The current algebra module $\bigoplus_\nu C_\nu^\lambda$ is isomorphic to the dual local Weyl module $W^*(\bar{\lambda})$.*

Proof. We give a proof of existence of an injective map $\varphi: \bigoplus_\nu C_\nu^\lambda \rightarrow W^*(\bar{\lambda})$. The module $\bigoplus_\nu C_\nu^\lambda$ is cocyclic, cogenerated by the identity element 1_λ of the highest weight space $C_\lambda^\lambda \simeq \mathbb{C}$. This means that for any $v \in \bigoplus_\nu C_\nu^\lambda$, there exist $u \in \mathbf{U}(\mathfrak{sl}_n[t])$ such that $uv = 1_\lambda$. Moreover, $\bigoplus_\nu C_\nu^\lambda$ is a finite-dimensional highest weight module with the highest weight $\bar{\lambda}$. The remaining part of the proof follows from the dualization of the Theorem 3.1.2 – the universality property of local Weyl modules. More explicitly, any cocyclic finite-dimensional highest weight module of highest weight $\bar{\lambda}$ injects into a dual local Weyl module $W^*(\bar{\lambda})$. The injective, degree zero $\mathbf{U}(\mathfrak{sl}_n[t])$ -invariant map φ , which is uniquely defined $\varphi(1_{\bar{\lambda}}) = \delta_{v_{\bar{\lambda}}}$.

In order to prove surjectivity, it must shown that the co-kernel $W^*(\bar{\lambda})/\varphi(\bigoplus_\nu C_\nu^\lambda)$ is zero.

Socle of a $\mathbf{U}(\mathfrak{sl}_n[t])$ -module M is the largest semisimple submodule of M . Cosocle of M is the largest semisimple quotient of M . The dual of the socle of M is isomorphic to

the cosocle of the dual M^* . Kodera-Naoi [37] show that the socle of the local Weyl module $W(\bar{\lambda})$ is the degree d_ν^λ homogeneous piece, and it is isomorphic to the simple \mathfrak{sl}_n -module $V(\bar{\lambda}_{\min})$ where $\bar{\lambda}_{\min}$ is the unique minimal dominant weight amongst those $\leq \bar{\lambda}$.

Dually, the cosocle of $W(\bar{\lambda})$ is $V(\bar{\lambda}_{\min})$, consisting of degree zero elements. By the multiplicity formula (5.37), the cosocle of $\bigoplus_\nu C_\nu^\lambda$ is also isomorphic to $V(\bar{\lambda}_{\min})$ in degree zero, generated by the unit of the algebra $C_{\lambda_{\min}}^\lambda$ over \mathfrak{sl}_n . Hence, $W^*(\bar{\lambda})/\varphi(\bigoplus_\nu C_\nu^\lambda)$ has no degree zero elements.

The dual local Weyl module $W^*(\bar{\lambda})$ has a finite length, therefore every quotient of $W^*(\bar{\lambda})$ contains a simple submodule, which lies in the cosocle, by the definition of the cosocle. Since the cosocle of $W^*(\bar{\lambda})$ is simple, it is contained in the co-kernel $W^*(\bar{\lambda})/\varphi(\bigoplus_\nu C_\nu^\lambda)$. However, $W^*(\bar{\lambda})/\varphi(\bigoplus_\nu C_\nu^\lambda)$ has no degree zero elements, and hence is zero. \square

Shan-Vasserot-Varagnolo [56] and Webster [60] also prove that there is a graded algebra isomorphism between the C_ν^λ and the center $Z\left(R^\lambda(\bar{\lambda} - \bar{\nu})\right)$ of the cyclotomic KLR algebra $R^\lambda(\bar{\lambda} - \bar{\nu})$ of rank $\bar{\lambda} - \bar{\nu}$. Theorem 7.23 and graded dimension formula in [13] gives the grade dimension of the center $Z\left(R^\lambda(\bar{\lambda} - \bar{\nu})\right)$:

$$\sum_{r \geq 0} \dim_{\mathbb{C}} Z\left(R^\lambda(\bar{\lambda} - \bar{\nu})\right) \{2r\} t^r = t^{d_\nu^\lambda/2} \sum_{\tau \in \mathcal{P}^+(n, N)} K_{\tau, \nu} K_{\tau T, \lambda T}(t^{-1}). \quad (5.43)$$

By Proposition 5.38, the right hand side of the equation (5.43) depend on $\bar{\lambda}$ and $\bar{\nu}$ rather than actual λ and ν .

Theorem 5.4.6. *The graded character of the local Weyl module is given by the formula*

$$ch_t W(\bar{\lambda}) = \sum_{\tau \in \mathcal{P}^+(n, N)} K_{\tau T, \lambda T}(t) ch V(\bar{\tau}), \quad (5.44)$$

and the graded dimension of the weight space $\bar{\nu}$ is given by

$$\dim_{\mathbb{C}} W_{\bar{\nu}}(\bar{\lambda}) = \sum_{r \geq 0} \dim_{\mathbb{C}} W_{\bar{\nu}}(\bar{\lambda}) \{2r\} t^r = \sum_{\tau \in \mathcal{P}^+(n, N)} K_{\tau, \nu} K_{\tau T, \lambda T}(t). \quad (5.45)$$

Proof. Combining the multiplicity formula (5.37) with the Theorem 7.23, we have

$$\sum_{r \geq 0} \left[\bigoplus_\nu W_{\bar{\nu}}^*(\bar{\lambda}) \{d_\nu^\lambda - 2r\} : V(\bar{\tau}) \right] t^r = K_{\tau T, \lambda T}(t), \quad (5.46)$$

Since $W_{\bar{\nu}}^*(\bar{\lambda})\{d_{\bar{\nu}}^{\lambda} - 2r\} = (W_{\bar{\nu}}(\bar{\lambda})\{2r\})^*$ and $V(\bar{\tau}) \simeq V^*(\bar{\tau})$, the multiplicity formula for the local Weyl module is

$$\sum_{r \geq 0} [\bigoplus_{\nu} W_{\bar{\nu}}(\bar{\lambda})\{2r\} : V(\bar{\tau})] t^r = K_{\tau^T, \lambda^T}(t), \quad (5.47)$$

which implies (5.44). The graded dimension formula follows similarly from the equation (5.42). \square

Remark 5.4.7. Let $\lambda \in \mathcal{P}^+(n, N)$ and $W(\bar{\lambda})$ be the local Weyl module with the highest weight $\bar{\lambda}$. If we set $t = 1$ in the formula (5.44), we get

$$\text{ch}_t W(\bar{\lambda})|_{t=1} = \sum_{\tau \in \mathcal{P}^+(n, N)} K_{\tau^T, \lambda^T}(1) \text{ch} V(\bar{\tau}) = \text{ch} \left(\bigwedge^{\lambda_1^T} \mathbb{C}^n \otimes \bigwedge^{\lambda_2^T} \mathbb{C}^n \otimes \cdots \otimes \bigwedge^{\lambda_p^T} \mathbb{C}^n \right), \quad (5.48)$$

where the $\lambda^T = (\lambda_1^T, \lambda_2^T, \dots, \lambda_p^T)$ is the transpose of λ . The equation (5.48) also follows from Chari-Loktev [24], where they prove that $W(\bar{\lambda})$ is isomorphic to a certain graded tensor product of fundamental representations, called the fusion product, where recover the usual tensor product

$$\bigwedge^{\lambda_1^T} \mathbb{C}^n \otimes \bigwedge^{\lambda_2^T} \mathbb{C}^n \otimes \cdots \otimes \bigwedge^{\lambda_p^T} \mathbb{C}^n = \bigoplus_{\tau \in \mathcal{P}^+(n, N)} (V(\bar{\tau}))^{\oplus K_{\tau^T, \lambda^T}} \quad (5.49)$$

if we set $t = 1$.

A computation shows that if $\lambda_0 = (N, 0, \dots, 0)$, the graded dimension of $C_{\nu}^{\lambda_0}$ is given by the quantum multinomial coefficient

$$\binom{N}{\nu}_t = \binom{N}{\nu_1, \dots, \nu_n}_t = \frac{[N]_t!}{[\nu_1]_t! \cdots [\nu_n]_t!},$$

where $[a]_t!$ denotes the t -factorial

$$\frac{(1-t)(1-t^2) \cdots (1-t^a)}{(1-t)^a} = (1+t)(1+t+t^2) \cdots (1+t+t^2+\cdots+t^{a-1}).$$

Example 5.4.8. Let $N = 9$, $n = 4$, $\lambda = (5, 2, 1, 1)$ and $\nu = (3, 1, 2, 3)$. We compute the graded dimension of $Z \left(R^{\bar{\lambda}}(\bar{\lambda} - \bar{\nu}) \right)$. We have $\lambda^T = (4, 2, 1, 1, 1)$, $d_{\bar{\nu}}^{\lambda} = 31 - 23 = 8$.

$$\sum_{r \geq 0} \dim Z \left(R^{\bar{\lambda}}(\bar{\lambda} - \bar{\nu}) \right) \{2r\} t^r = t^4 \sum_{\tau \in \mathcal{P}^+(4, 9)} K_{\tau, (3, 1, 2, 3)} \cdot K_{\tau^T, (4, 2, 1, 1, 1)}(t^{-1}) = \quad (5.50)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= t^4 [K_{(3,3,2,1),(3,1,2,3)} \cdot K_{(4,3,2,0,0),(4,2,1,1,1)}(t^{-1}) + K_{(5,2,1,1),(3,1,2,3)} \cdot K_{(4,2,1,1,1),(4,2,1,1,1)}(t^{-1}) + \\
&\quad + K_{(4,3,1,1),(3,1,2,3)} \cdot K_{(4,2,2,1,0),(4,2,1,1,1)}(t^{-1}) + K_{(4,2,2,1),(3,1,2,3)} \cdot K_{(4,3,1,1,0),(4,2,1,1,1)}(t^{-1})] = \\
&= t^4(t^{-2} + t^{-3} + t^{-4} + 2 + 2(t^{-2} + t^{-1}) + (t^{-3} + t^{-2} + t^{-1})) = 2t^4 + 3t^3 + 4t^2 + 2t + 1.
\end{aligned}$$

It is easy to check that we get the same graded dimension if we choose $\lambda' = (4, 1, 0, 0)$ and $\nu' = (2, 0, 1, 2)$. In both cases, $\bar{\lambda} = \bar{\lambda}' = (3, 1, 0)$ and $\bar{\nu} = \bar{\nu}' = (2, -1, -1)$.

Example 5.4.9. Let $N = 5$, $n = 3$, $\lambda = (5, 0, 0)$ and $\nu = (3, 1, 1)$. The graded dimension of the center $Z\left(R^{\bar{\lambda}}(\bar{\lambda} - \bar{\nu})\right)$ is computed as follows. We have $\lambda^T = (1, 1, 1, 1, 1)$, $d_\nu^\lambda = 14$.

$$\begin{aligned}
&\sum_{r \geq 0} \dim_{\mathbb{C}} Z\left(R^{\bar{\lambda}}(\bar{\lambda} - \bar{\nu})\right) \{2r\} t^r = t^7 \sum_{\tau \in \mathcal{P}^+(3,5)} K_{\tau,(3,1,1)} \cdot K_{\tau^T,(1,1,1,1,1)}(t^{-1}) = \quad (5.51) \\
&= t^7 (K_{(5,0,0),(3,1,1)} \cdot K_{(1,1,1,1,1),(1,1,1,1,1)}(t^{-1}) + K_{(4,1,0),(3,1,1)} \cdot K_{(2,1,1,1),(1,1,1,1,1)}(t^{-1}) + \\
&\quad + K_{(3,2,0),(3,1,1)} \cdot K_{(2,2,1,0,0),(1,1,1,1,1)}(t^{-1}) + K_{(3,1,1),(3,1,1)} \cdot K_{(3,1,1,0,0),(1,1,1,1,1)}(t^{-1})) = \\
&= t^7 (1 + 2(t^{-1} + t^{-2} + t^{-3} + t^{-4}) + (t^{-2} + t^{-3} + t^{-4} + t^{-5} + t^{-6}) + (t^{-3} + t^{-4} + 2t^{-5} + t^{-6} + t^{-7})) = \\
&= t^7 + 2t^6 + 3t^5 + 4t^4 + 4t^3 + 3t^2 + 2t^1 + 1 = \binom{5}{3, 1, 1}_t.
\end{aligned}$$

Chapter III

Trace of categorified quantum symmetric pairs

This chapter consists of three sections. We give a brief definition of the coideal algebra and set our notation in the first section. Next we present Bao-Shan-Wang-Webster's [2] diagrammatic categorification of the coideal algebra. The current coideal algebra is defined in the last section. We compute the trace of Bao-Shan-Wang-Webster's 2-category and compare it to the current coideal algebra.

6 Categorification of the coideal algebra

6.1 The coideal algebra U^j

Fix an integer $n \geq 1$. We will denote $\diamond := \frac{1}{2}$ and define the set

$$\mathbb{I} = \mathbb{I}_{2n} = \{i \in \mathbb{Z} + \diamond \mid -n < i < n\}. \quad (6.1)$$

and a subset

$$\mathbb{I}^+ = \{i \in \mathbb{Z} + \diamond \mid 0 \leq i < n\} \subset \mathbb{I}. \quad (6.2)$$

We consider the Cartan datum of type A_{2n} with Cartan matrix $\{a_{ij}\}_{i,j \in \mathbb{I}}$, simple roots $\{\alpha_i\}_{i \in \mathbb{I}}$, simple coroots $\{\alpha_i^\vee\}_{i \in \mathbb{I}}$. Let X be the \mathfrak{sl}_{2n+1} weight lattice, and let $Y = \bigoplus_{i \in \mathbb{I}} \mathbb{Z}\alpha_i^\vee$ be the coroot lattice. The entries of the Cartan matrix are given by $a_{ij} = \langle \alpha_i^\vee, \alpha_j \rangle$ for $i, j \in \mathbb{I}$.

Let $\bigoplus_{a=-n}^n \mathbb{Z}\varepsilon_a$ be an integer lattice with the orthonormal basis $\{\varepsilon_i, -n \leq i \leq n\}$. We can identify X

$$X = \bigoplus_{a=-n}^n \mathbb{Z}\varepsilon_a / \mathbb{Z} \left(\sum_{a=-n}^n \varepsilon_a \right).$$

Let ϑ be the involution on the weight lattice X defined by $\vartheta(\varepsilon_a) = -\varepsilon_{-a}$ for $-n \leq a \leq n$. We can write $\mu^\vartheta = \vartheta(\mu)$, for $\mu \in X$. Let X^ϑ be the sublattice of ϑ -fixed points of X . Since $\alpha_i^\vartheta = \alpha_{-i}$ for all $i \in \mathbb{I}$, ϑ induces an automorphism of the root system. We set ${}^\vartheta\alpha_i^\vee = \alpha_i^\vee - \alpha_{-i}^\vee$ for $i \in \mathbb{I}^+$ and define

$$X_j := X/X^\vartheta, \quad Y^j := \bigoplus_{i \in \mathbb{I}^+} \mathbb{Z} {}^\vartheta\alpha_i^\vee. \quad (6.3)$$

The pairing $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle : Y \times X \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}$ induces a nondegenerate pairing

$$\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle : Y^j \times X_j \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}.$$

For $\mu \in X_j$, we write

$$\mu_i = \langle {}^\vartheta\alpha_i^\vee, \mu \rangle, \quad \text{for } i \in \mathbb{I}^+.$$

We sometimes write the image of $\mu \in X$ in X_j again by μ . Let $\dot{\mathbf{U}}^j$ be the $\mathbb{Q}(q)$ -linear category with the object set X_j and morphisms generated by $E_i : \mu \mapsto \mu + \alpha_i = \mu - \alpha_{-i}$, $F_i : \mu \mapsto \mu - \alpha_i = \mu + \alpha_{-i}$, for all $i \in \mathbb{I}^+$, subject to the following relations for $i \neq j$:

$$[E_i, F_j]1_\mu = 0, \quad (6.4)$$

$$[E_i, F_i]1_\mu = [\mu_i]1_\mu, \quad \forall i \neq \diamond, \quad (6.5)$$

$$\sum_{a+b=1-a_{ij}} (-1)^a E_i^{(a)} E_j E_i^{(b)} = \sum_{a+b=1-a_{ij}} (-1)^a F_i^{(a)} F_j F_i^{(b)} = 0, \quad (6.6)$$

$$(E_\diamond^{(2)} F_\diamond - E_\diamond F_\diamond E_\diamond + F_\diamond E_\diamond^{(2)})1_\mu = -(q^{\mu_\diamond+2} + q^{-\mu_\diamond-2})E_\diamond 1_\mu, \quad (6.7)$$

$$(F_\diamond^{(2)} E_\diamond - F_\diamond E_\diamond F_\diamond + E_\diamond F_\diamond^{(2)})1_\mu = -(q^{\mu_\diamond-1} + q^{-\mu_\diamond+1})F_\diamond 1_\mu, \quad (6.8)$$

where $E_\diamond^{(2)}1_\mu$ and $F_\diamond^{(2)}1_\mu$ are divided powers. The algebra $\dot{\mathbf{U}}^j$ is called (*idempotent*) *coideal algebra*. The special relations (6.7) and (6.8), called *j-Serre relations*, make the coideal algebra different from the usual quantum group.

6.2 Coideal 2-category \mathcal{U}^j

Here we introduce the categorification of $\dot{\mathbf{U}}^j$ by Bao-Shan-Wang-Webster [2]. For $i, j \in \mathbb{I}^+$ we set

$$t_{ij} = \begin{cases} -1, & \text{if } j = i - 1, \\ 1, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Definition 6.2.1. *The coideal 2-category \mathcal{W} is the graded, additive \mathbb{k} -linear 2-category with*

- objects μ for all $\mu \in X_j$.
- The 1-morphisms are the direct sums of compositions of shifts of these 1-morphisms.

$$\mathcal{E}_i: \mu \rightarrow \mu + \alpha_i, \quad \mathcal{F}_i: \mu \rightarrow \mu - \alpha_i, \quad \text{for } i \in \mathbb{I}^+.$$

- 2-morphisms are generated by diagrams. We denote the identity 2-morphisms of $\mathcal{E}_i 1_\mu$ and $\mathcal{F}_i 1_\mu$ by $\mu + \alpha_i \uparrow_i^\mu$ and $\mu - \alpha_i \downarrow_i^\mu$ respectively. The other generators of 2-morphisms are

$$\begin{array}{ll} \uparrow_i^\mu: \mathcal{E}_i 1_\mu \rightarrow \mathcal{E}_i 1_\mu \langle 2 \rangle, & \downarrow_i^\mu: \mathcal{F}_i 1_\mu \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_i 1_\mu \langle 2 \rangle, \\ \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \mu \\ \searrow \\ i \quad j \end{array}: \mathcal{E}_i \mathcal{E}_j 1_\mu \rightarrow \mathcal{E}_j \mathcal{E}_i 1_\mu \langle -a_{ij} \rangle, & \begin{array}{c} \nwarrow \\ \mu \\ \swarrow \\ i \quad j \end{array}: \mathcal{F}_i \mathcal{F}_j 1_\mu \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_j \mathcal{F}_i 1_\mu \langle -a_{ij} \rangle, \\ \begin{array}{c} \curvearrowright \\ \mu \\ i \end{array}: 1_\mu \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_i \mathcal{E}_i 1_\mu \langle \mu_i + a_{ii} - 1 \rangle, & \begin{array}{c} \curvearrowleft \\ \mu \\ i \end{array}: 1_\mu \rightarrow \mathcal{E}_i \mathcal{F}_i 1_\mu \langle 1 - \mu_i \rangle, \\ \begin{array}{c} \curvearrowright \\ \mu \\ i \end{array}: \mathcal{E}_i \mathcal{F}_i 1_\mu \rightarrow 1_\mu \langle 1 - \mu_i \rangle, & \begin{array}{c} \curvearrowleft \\ \mu \\ i \end{array}: \mathcal{F}_i \mathcal{E}_i 1_\mu \rightarrow 1_\mu \langle \mu_i + a_{ii} - 1 \rangle. \end{array}$$

The 2-morphisms are subject to the following relations (1)–(8):

1. *Adjunction:*

$$\begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \mu \\ i \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \mu \\ i \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \mu \\ i \end{array}, \quad \begin{array}{c} \downarrow \\ \mu \\ i \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \downarrow \\ \mu \\ i \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \downarrow \\ \mu \\ i \end{array}. \quad (6.9)$$

2. *Cyclicity of x and τ :*

$$\begin{array}{c} \downarrow \\ \mu \\ i \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \downarrow \\ \mu \\ i \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \downarrow \\ \mu \\ i \end{array}, \quad (6.10)$$

5. Nodal relations :

Set

$$\chi =: \begin{array}{c} i \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \mu \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ j \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} i \\ \curvearrowright \\ \mu \\ \curvearrowleft \\ j \end{array}, \quad \chi' = \begin{array}{c} i \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \mu \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ j \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} i \\ \curvearrowleft \\ \mu \\ \curvearrowright \\ j \end{array}. \quad (6.18)$$

Then for any i we have

$$\begin{array}{c} \curvearrowright \\ \mu \\ \curvearrowleft \\ i \end{array} = \sum_{t+s=-1} \begin{array}{c} i \\ \curvearrowright \\ \mu \\ \curvearrowleft \\ i \end{array} \begin{array}{c} s \\ \curvearrowright \\ t \\ i \end{array}, \quad \begin{array}{c} \curvearrowleft \\ \mu \\ \curvearrowright \\ i \end{array} = - \sum_{t+s=-1} \begin{array}{c} i \\ \curvearrowleft \\ \mu \\ \curvearrowright \\ i \end{array} \begin{array}{c} s \\ \curvearrowleft \\ t \\ i \end{array}. \quad (6.19)$$

6. Bicross relations:

For $i \neq \diamond$, we have

$$\begin{array}{c} \curvearrowright \\ \mu \\ \curvearrowleft \\ i \end{array} = \sum_{u+s+t=-2} \begin{array}{c} i \\ \curvearrowright \\ \mu \\ \curvearrowleft \\ i \end{array} \begin{array}{c} u \\ \curvearrowright \\ s \\ t \\ i \end{array} - \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ i \\ \downarrow \\ i \end{array} \mu, \quad \begin{array}{c} \curvearrowleft \\ \mu \\ \curvearrowright \\ i \end{array} = \sum_{u+s+t=-2} \begin{array}{c} i \\ \curvearrowleft \\ \mu \\ \curvearrowright \\ i \end{array} \begin{array}{c} u \\ \curvearrowleft \\ s \\ t \\ i \end{array} - \begin{array}{c} \downarrow \\ i \\ \uparrow \\ i \end{array} \mu. \quad (6.20)$$

For $i = \diamond$, we have

$$\begin{array}{c} \curvearrowright \\ \mu \\ \curvearrowleft \\ \diamond \end{array} = \sum_{u+s+t=-2} \begin{array}{c} \diamond \\ \curvearrowright \\ \mu \\ \curvearrowleft \\ \diamond \end{array} \begin{array}{c} u \\ \curvearrowright \\ s \\ t \\ \diamond \end{array} - \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \diamond \\ \downarrow \\ \diamond \end{array} \mu - \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \diamond \\ \downarrow \\ \diamond \end{array} \mu, \quad \begin{array}{c} \curvearrowleft \\ \mu \\ \curvearrowright \\ \diamond \end{array} = \sum_{u+s+t=-2} \begin{array}{c} \diamond \\ \curvearrowleft \\ \mu \\ \curvearrowright \\ \diamond \end{array} \begin{array}{c} u \\ \curvearrowleft \\ s \\ t \\ \diamond \end{array} - \begin{array}{c} \downarrow \\ \diamond \\ \uparrow \\ \diamond \end{array} \mu - \begin{array}{c} \downarrow \\ \diamond \\ \uparrow \\ \diamond \end{array} \mu. \quad (6.21)$$

In all the sums above, the indices that are not on a circle run over non-negative integers.

7. Mixed relations:

For any $i \neq j$,

$$\begin{array}{c} \curvearrowright \\ \mu \\ \curvearrowleft \\ i \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ i \\ \downarrow \\ j \end{array} \mu, \quad \begin{array}{c} \curvearrowleft \\ \mu \\ \curvearrowright \\ i \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \downarrow \\ i \\ \uparrow \\ j \end{array} \mu. \quad (6.22)$$

8. For the sake of simplicity, we will omit the index \diamond from the diagrams, that is, all the strands without labels should be viewed as labeled by \diamond . We have the following relation:

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \mu &= \begin{array}{c} \diagup \\ \diagdown \\ \diagdown \\ \diagup \end{array} \mu - \begin{array}{c} \diagdown \\ \diagup \\ \diagup \\ \diagdown \end{array} \mu - \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \mu - \begin{array}{c} \downarrow \\ \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \end{array} \mu + \sum_{\substack{s+t+u+v \\ =-3}} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \mu + \sum_{\substack{s+t+u+v \\ =-3}} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \mu . \end{aligned} \quad (6.23)$$

The relation

$$\begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \end{array} \mu = - \begin{array}{c} \diagup \\ \diagdown \\ \diagdown \\ \diagup \end{array} \mu + \begin{array}{c} \diagdown \\ \diagup \\ \diagup \\ \diagdown \end{array} \mu - \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \mu - \begin{array}{c} \downarrow \\ \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \end{array} \mu + \sum_{\substack{s+t+u+v \\ =-3}} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \mu + \sum_{\substack{s+t+u+v \\ =-3}} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \mu$$

holds in \mathcal{U}^j , since it is the image of (6.23) under the isomorphism $\text{End}(\mathcal{F}_\diamond \mathcal{E}_\diamond \mathcal{F}_\diamond) \cong \text{End}(\mathcal{E}_\diamond \mathcal{F}_\diamond \mathcal{E}_\diamond)$ given by adjunction.

We generalize the nodal relations (6.19) and the bicross relations (6.21) for \diamond -labeled strands in the following two lemmas.

Lemma 6.2.2. *The following relations hold for any $p \geq 0$:*

$$\begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \end{array} \mu = \sum_{t+s=p-1} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \mu, \quad \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \end{array} \mu = - \sum_{t+s=p-1} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \mu . \end{aligned} \quad (6.24)$$

Proof. We prove the equality on the left, the one on the right follows similarly. Using the relation (6.12), we inductively move the dots through crossings:

$$\begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \end{array} \mu = \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \end{array} \mu + \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \end{array} \mu = \dots = \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \end{array} \mu + \sum_{t=0}^{p-1} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \end{array} \mu .$$

We can simplify further using the relation (6.19):

$$\begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \end{array} \mu = \sum_{t+s=-1} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \mu + \sum_{t=0}^{p-1} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \mu = \sum_{\substack{t+s=p-1, \\ p \leq t}} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \mu + \sum_{\substack{t+s=p-1, \\ 0 \leq t \leq p-1}} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \mu = \sum_{t+s=p-1} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \downarrow \\ \uparrow \\ \downarrow \end{array} \mu .$$

□

The relation (6.26) can be proven in a similar way. \square

It can be easily checked that all the relations between 2-morphisms are homogeneous. Thus, the grading on \mathfrak{U}^j is well-defined. Let $\dot{\mathfrak{U}}^j$ be the Karoubi envelope of \mathfrak{U}^j and ${}_{\mathcal{A}}\dot{\mathfrak{U}}^j$ the \mathcal{A} -linear subcategory of $\dot{\mathfrak{U}}^j$ with the same objects and with morphisms generated by divided powers $E_i^{(a)}1_\mu, F_i^{(a)}1_\mu$, for all $i \in \mathbb{I}^+$, $\mu \in X_j$, and $a \geq 0$. The next statement is due to Bao-Shan-Wang-Webster [2], Theorem 6.5.

Theorem 6.2.4. *There is a $\mathbb{Q}(q)$ -module isomorphism between the split Grothendieck group $K_0(\dot{\mathfrak{U}}^j)$ and ${}_{\mathcal{A}}\dot{\mathfrak{U}}^j$.*

Recall the definition of the \mathcal{C}^* for given \mathbb{k} -linear 2-category \mathcal{C} . We define the $\mathcal{U}^j = (\mathfrak{U}^j)^*$, that is, \mathcal{U}^j is the 2-category with the same objects and 1-morphisms as \mathfrak{U}^j , and with 2-morphisms

$$\mathcal{U}^j(A, B)(f, g) := \bigoplus_{t \in \mathbb{Z}} \mathfrak{U}^j(A, B)(f, g\langle t \rangle) \quad (6.27)$$

for given 1-morphisms $f, g: A \rightarrow B$.

7 Trace of \mathcal{U}^j

7.1 Current coideal algebra

We recall our convention that all the strands without labels should be viewed as labeled by \diamond . Let $\mu_\diamond = \langle \vartheta \alpha_\diamond^\vee, \mu \rangle$, and define degree $2r$ bubbles

$$\begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ r \end{array} := \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ -\mu_\diamond - 2 + r \end{array}, \quad \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowright \\ \mu \\ r \end{array} := \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowright \\ \mu \\ \mu_\diamond - 1 + r \end{array}. \quad (7.1)$$

The sliding equations are given by Bao-Shan-Wang-Webster [2], Lemma A.1 and A.2.

Lemma 7.1.1 (Bubble slides). *The following bubble sliding relations hold for all $\mu \in X_j$:*

$$\uparrow \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ r \end{array} = \sum_{s=0}^r \left[\frac{s+1}{2} \right] \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ r-s \end{array} \uparrow^{s\mu}, \quad (7.2)$$

$$\begin{array}{c} \circlearrowright \\ \mu \\ r \end{array} \uparrow = \sum_{s=0}^r \left[\frac{s+1}{2} \right] \uparrow^s \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowright \\ \mu \\ r-s \end{array}, \quad (7.3)$$

$$\uparrow \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ r \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ r-3 \end{array} \uparrow^{3\mu} - \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ r-2 \end{array} \uparrow^{2\mu} - \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ r-1 \end{array} \uparrow^\mu + \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ r \end{array} \uparrow, \quad (7.4)$$

$$\begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \uparrow \\ r \end{array} \mu = 3 \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \bullet \\ r-3 \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ r-3 \end{array} - 2 \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \bullet \\ r-2 \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ r-2 \end{array} - \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \bullet \\ r-1 \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ r-1 \end{array} + \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \bullet \\ r \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ r \end{array} . \quad (7.5)$$

For $m \geq 1$, we define

$$P_{i,m}(\mu) := \sum_{t=0}^m t \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ t \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ m-t \end{array} = - \sum_{t=0}^m t \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ m-t \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ t \end{array} . \quad (7.6)$$

We will need the following crucial lemma for the proof of our main result.

Lemma 7.1.2. *The following relation holds for $m \geq 1$:*

$$P_{\diamond,m}(\mu) \begin{array}{c} \mu \\ \uparrow \\ \mu-\alpha_{\diamond} \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \mu \\ \uparrow \\ \mu-\alpha_{\diamond} \end{array} P_{\diamond,m}(\mu - \alpha_{\diamond}) + (4 + 2(-1)^m) \begin{array}{c} \mu \\ \uparrow \\ \bullet \\ m \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \mu-\alpha_{\diamond} \end{array} . \quad (7.7)$$

Proof.

$$\begin{aligned} P_{\diamond,m}(\mu) \begin{array}{c} \mu \\ \uparrow \\ \mu-\alpha_{\diamond} \end{array} &= \sum_{t=0}^m t \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ t \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ m-t \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \mu-\alpha_{\diamond} \end{array} = \\ &= \sum_{t=0}^m t \sum_{i=0}^t \left\lfloor \frac{i+1}{2} \right\rfloor \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \bullet \\ i \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ t-i \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ m-t \end{array} - \sum_{t=0}^m t \sum_{i=0}^t \left\lfloor \frac{i+1}{2} \right\rfloor \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \bullet \\ i+1 \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ t-i \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ m-t-1 \end{array} + \\ &+ \sum_{t=0}^m t \sum_{i=0}^t \left\lfloor \frac{i+1}{2} \right\rfloor \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \bullet \\ i+2 \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ t-i \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ m-t-2 \end{array} + \sum_{t=0}^m t \sum_{i=0}^t \left\lfloor \frac{i+1}{2} \right\rfloor \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \bullet \\ i+3 \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ t-i \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ m-t-3 \end{array} = \\ &= \sum_{t=0}^m t \sum_{i=0}^t \left\lfloor \frac{i+1}{2} \right\rfloor \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \bullet \\ i \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ t-i \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ m-t \end{array} - \sum_{t=1}^m (t-1) \sum_{i=1}^t \left\lfloor \frac{i}{2} \right\rfloor \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \bullet \\ i \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ t-i \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ m-t \end{array} - \\ &- \sum_{t=2}^m (t-2) \sum_{i=2}^t \left\lfloor \frac{i-1}{2} \right\rfloor \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \bullet \\ i \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ t-i \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ m-t \end{array} + \sum_{t=3}^m (t-3) \sum_{i=3}^t \left\lfloor \frac{i-2}{2} \right\rfloor \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \bullet \\ i \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ t-i \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ m-t \end{array} = \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \sum_{t=1}^m \sum_{i=0}^t (t-1) ((-1)^i + 1) \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \bullet \\ i \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ t-i \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ m-t \end{array} - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{t=3}^m \sum_{i=2}^t (t-3) ((-1)^i + 1) \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \bullet \\ i \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ t-i \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ m-t \end{array} + \\ &+ \sum_{t=1}^m \sum_{i=0}^t \left\lfloor \frac{i+1}{2} \right\rfloor \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \bullet \\ i \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ t-i \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ m-t \end{array} - \sum_{t=3}^m \sum_{i=2}^t \left\lfloor \frac{i-1}{2} \right\rfloor \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \bullet \\ i \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ t-i \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ m-t \end{array} = \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=0}^2 ((-1)^i + 1) \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \bullet \\ i \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ 2-i \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ m-2 \end{array} + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{t=3}^m 2(t-1) \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \bullet \\ t \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ t \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \mu \\ m-t \end{array} + \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
& \sum_{t=3}^m \sum_{i=2}^t ((-1)^i + 1) \uparrow^i \circlearrowleft_{t-i} \circlearrowleft_{m-t} + \sum_{t=3}^m \sum_{i=2}^t \left(\left\lfloor \frac{i+1}{2} \right\rfloor - \left\lfloor \frac{i-1}{2} \right\rfloor \right) \uparrow^i \circlearrowleft_{t-i} \circlearrowleft_{m-t} + \\
& + \sum_{t=1}^2 \sum_{i=0}^t \left\lfloor \frac{i+1}{2} \right\rfloor \uparrow^i \circlearrowleft_{t-i} \circlearrowleft_{m-t} + \sum_{t=3}^m \sum_{i=0}^1 \left\lfloor \frac{i+1}{2} \right\rfloor \uparrow^i \circlearrowleft_{t-i} \circlearrowleft_{m-t} = \\
& = \uparrow \circlearrowleft_2 \circlearrowleft_{m-2} + \uparrow^2 \circlearrowleft_0 \circlearrowleft_{m-2} + \sum_{t=3}^m (t-1) \uparrow \circlearrowleft_t \circlearrowleft_{m-t} + \\
& + \sum_{t=3}^m \sum_{i=1}^t ((-1)^i + 1) \uparrow^i \circlearrowleft_{t-i} \circlearrowleft_{m-t} + \sum_{t=3}^m \sum_{i=2}^t \uparrow^i \circlearrowleft_{t-i} \circlearrowleft_{m-t} + \\
& + \sum_{i=0}^1 \uparrow^i \circlearrowleft_{1-i} \circlearrowleft_{m-1} + \uparrow \circlearrowleft_2 \circlearrowleft_{m-2} + \uparrow \circlearrowleft_1 \circlearrowleft_{m-2} + 2 \uparrow^2 \circlearrowleft_0 \circlearrowleft_{m-2} + \\
& + \sum_{t=3}^m \uparrow \circlearrowleft_t \circlearrowleft_{m-t} + \sum_{t=3}^m \uparrow \circlearrowleft_{t-1} \circlearrowleft_{m-t} = \\
& = \sum_{t=1}^m (t-1) \uparrow \circlearrowleft_t \circlearrowleft_{m-t} + \sum_{t=1}^m \sum_{i=1}^t ((-1)^i + 1) \uparrow^i \circlearrowleft_{t-i} \circlearrowleft_{m-t} + \\
& + \sum_{t=1}^m \sum_{i=0}^t \uparrow^i \circlearrowleft_{t-i} \circlearrowleft_{m-t} = \\
& = \sum_{t=1}^m t \uparrow \circlearrowleft_t \circlearrowleft_{m-t} + \sum_{t=1}^m \sum_{i=1}^t (2 + (-1)^i) \uparrow^i \circlearrowleft_{t-i} \circlearrowleft_{m-t} = \\
& = \uparrow P_{\diamond, m}(\mu - \alpha_{\diamond}) + \sum_{i=1}^m \sum_{t=i}^m (2 + (-1)^i) \uparrow^i \circlearrowleft_{t-i} \circlearrowleft_{m-t} = \\
& = \uparrow P_{\diamond, m}(\mu - \alpha_{\diamond}) + \sum_{i=1}^m \sum_{t=0}^{m-i} (2 + (-1)^i) \uparrow^i \circlearrowleft_t \circlearrowleft_{m-i-t} = \uparrow P_{\diamond, m}(\mu - \alpha_{\diamond}) + 2(2 + (-1)^m) \uparrow^m.
\end{aligned}$$

□

Definition 7.1.3. The current coideal algebra U_t^2 is the \mathbb{k} -algebra generated by $E_{i,r}, F_{i,r}, H_{i,r}$ over all $i \in \mathbb{I}^+$ and $r \geq 0$, subject to the following relations:

$$[\mathbf{H}_{i,r}, \mathbf{H}_{j,s}] = 0 \quad \text{for all } i, j \in \mathbb{I}^j, r, s \geq 0, \quad (7.8)$$

$$[\mathbf{E}_{i,r}, \mathbf{E}_{j,s}] = 0, \quad [\mathbf{F}_{i,r}, \mathbf{F}_{j,s}] = 0 \quad \text{if } |i - j| \neq 1, r, s \geq 0, \quad (7.9)$$

$$[\mathbf{H}_{i,r}, \mathbf{F}_{i,s}] = -2\mathbf{F}_{i,r+s}, \quad [\mathbf{H}_{i,r}, \mathbf{E}_{i,s}] = 2\mathbf{E}_{i,r+s} \quad \text{for all } i \neq \diamond, r, s \geq 0, \quad (7.10)$$

$$[\mathbf{H}_{j,r}, \mathbf{F}_{i,s}] = \mathbf{F}_{i,r+s}, \quad [\mathbf{H}_{j,r}, \mathbf{E}_{i,s}] = -\mathbf{E}_{i,r+s} \quad \text{for all } |i - j| = 1, r, s \geq 0, \quad (7.11)$$

$$[\mathbf{E}_{i,r+1}, \mathbf{E}_{j,s}] = [\mathbf{E}_{i,r}, \mathbf{E}_{j,s+1}], \quad [\mathbf{F}_{i,r+1}, \mathbf{F}_{j,s}] = [\mathbf{F}_{i,r}, \mathbf{F}_{j,s+1}] \quad \text{for all } i, j \in \mathbb{I}^j, r, s \geq 0, \quad (7.12)$$

$$[\mathbf{E}_{i,r}, \mathbf{F}_{i,s}] = \mathbf{H}_{i,r+s} \quad \text{for all } i \neq \diamond, r, s \geq 0, \quad (7.13)$$

$$[\mathbf{E}_{i,r}, \mathbf{F}_{j,s}] = 0 \quad \text{for all } i \neq j, r, s \geq 0, \quad (7.14)$$

$$[\mathbf{E}_{i,p}, [\mathbf{E}_{i,r}, \mathbf{E}_{j,s}]] = 0, \quad [\mathbf{F}_{i,p}, [\mathbf{F}_{i,r}, \mathbf{F}_{j,s}]] = 0 \quad \text{for all } |i - j| = 1, p, r, s \geq 0, \quad (7.15)$$

$$[\mathbf{H}_{\diamond,r}, \mathbf{F}_{\diamond,s}] = (-2 - (-1)^r) \mathbf{F}_{\diamond,r+s}, \quad [\mathbf{H}_{\diamond,r}, \mathbf{E}_{\diamond,s}] = (2 + (-1)^r) \mathbf{E}_{\diamond,r+s} \quad \text{for all } r, s \geq 0, \quad (7.16)$$

$$[\mathbf{F}_{\diamond,p}, [\mathbf{F}_{\diamond,r}, \mathbf{E}_{\diamond,s}]] = (-2 - (-1)^{p+s} - (-1)^{r+s}) \mathbf{F}_{\diamond,p+r+s} \quad \text{for all } p, r, s \geq 0. \quad (7.17)$$

$$[\mathbf{E}_{\diamond,p}, [\mathbf{E}_{\diamond,r}, \mathbf{F}_{\diamond,s}]] = (-2 - (-1)^{p+s} - (-1)^{r+s}) \mathbf{E}_{\diamond,p+r+s}, \quad \text{for all } p, r, s \geq 0, \quad (7.18)$$

Let $\mathbf{U} = \mathbf{U}(\mathfrak{sl}_{2n+1}[t])$ be the current algebra, generated by $E_{i,r}, F_{i,r}, H_{i,r}$ over all $i \in \mathbb{I}$ and $r \geq 0$. There is an embedding of algebras $j: \mathbf{U}_t^j \rightarrow \mathbf{U}$ such that for all $i \in \mathbb{I}^+$

$$\mathbf{E}_{i,r} \mapsto E_{i,r} + (-1)^r F_{-i,r}, \quad \mathbf{F}_{i,r} \mapsto F_{i,r} + (-1)^r E_{-i,r}, \quad \mathbf{H}_{i,r} \mapsto H_{i,r} - (-1)^r H_{-i,r}. \quad (7.19)$$

The algebra \mathbf{U}_t^j is graded, and it can be viewed as a subalgebra of \mathbf{U} under the embedding j . The trace $\text{Tr} \mathcal{U}^j$ of the 2-category \mathcal{U}^j is the \mathbb{k} -linear category with the same objects as \mathcal{U}^j , and morphisms are obtained by closing the diagrams representing the 2-endomorphisms of \mathcal{U}^j to the right. Let $\mathbf{E}_{i,r}, \mathbf{F}_{i,r}, \mathbf{H}_{i,r}$ denote the generators of $\text{Tr} \mathcal{U}^j$ for all $i \in \mathbb{I}^j$ and $r \geq 0$:

$$\mathbf{E}_{i,r} 1_\mu = \left[\begin{array}{c} \uparrow \mu \\ \bullet^r \\ \downarrow i \end{array} \right], \quad \mathbf{F}_{i,r} 1_\mu := \left[\begin{array}{c} \downarrow \mu \\ \bullet^r \\ \uparrow i \end{array} \right], \quad (7.20)$$

$$\mathbf{H}_{i,r} 1_\mu := \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2} [P_{\diamond,r}(\mu) \text{Id}_{1_\mu}] & \text{if } i = \diamond \text{ and } r > 0, \\ [P_{i,r}(\mu) \text{Id}_{1_\mu}] & \text{if } i \neq \diamond \text{ and } r > 0, \\ \mu_i & \text{if } r = 0, \end{cases} \quad (7.21)$$

where $P_{i,r}(\mu)$ was defined in equation (7.6). We depict the trace classes graphically by closing diagrams around an annulus \star . Let \dot{U}_t^j be the idempotent completion of the algebra U_t^j . Then the following statement holds:

Theorem 7.1.4. *There is a well-defined algebra homomorphism $h: \dot{\mathcal{U}}_t^j \rightarrow \text{Tr } \mathcal{U}^j$, given by*

$$\mathbb{E}_{i,r} 1_\mu \mapsto \mathbb{E}_{i,r} 1_\mu, \quad \mathbb{F}_{i,r} 1_\mu \mapsto \mathbb{F}_{i,r} 1_\mu, \quad \mathbb{H}_{i,r} 1_\mu \mapsto \mathbb{H}_{i,r} 1_\mu. \quad (7.22)$$

7.2 Proof of the homomorphism theorem

In this final subsection we prove the Theorem 7.1.4.

Proof. In order to show that the homomorphism is well-defined, we will prove the relations (7.8) - (7.17) for the generators of $\text{Tr } \mathcal{U}^j$ using the relation in the 2-category \mathcal{U}^j . The relations (7.8) - (7.15) are already proved in Theorem 2.39. We only need to consider the relations between \diamond -labeled generators. The relations (7.16) follows directly from the Lemma 7.1.2, by closing the upward oriented strands to the left and right, respectively. We now prove the relation (7.17). By closing the terms of the equation (6.23) around the annulus \star , we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{F}_{\diamond,k} \mathbb{E}_{\diamond,l} \mathbb{F}_{\diamond,m} 1_\mu &= \text{Diagram 1} = \text{Diagram 2} - \text{Diagram 3} - 2 \text{Diagram 4} + \\ &+ \sum_{\substack{s+t+u=-3, \\ t \geq 0, \\ u \geq 0}} (t+1) \text{Diagram 5} + \sum_{\substack{s+t+u=-3, \\ t \geq 0, \\ u \geq 0}} (t+1) \text{Diagram 6}. \end{aligned} \quad (7.23)$$

We can simplify the first and the second terms in equation (7.23) using the trace relation and Lemma 6.2.3:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Diagram 1} &= \text{Diagram 7} = \sum_{\substack{s+t=k+l-2, \\ t \geq 0}} (t+1) \text{Diagram 8} - \text{Diagram 9} - \text{Diagram 10}, \end{aligned} \quad (7.24)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
& \text{Diagram 1} = \text{Diagram 2} = \sum_{\substack{s+t=m+l-2, \\ t \geq 0}} (t+1) \left(\text{Diagram 3} - \text{Diagram 4} - \text{Diagram 5} \right).
\end{aligned} \tag{7.25}$$

The crossings in the first terms of the equations (7.24) and (7.25) can be further reduced using the relations (6.24), and we get

$$\begin{aligned}
& \text{Diagram 1} = - \sum_{\substack{s+t=k+l-2, \\ t \geq 0}} (t+1) \sum_{\substack{f+g=t-1, \\ f \geq 0}} \left(\text{Diagram 6} - \text{Diagram 7} - \text{Diagram 8} \right),
\end{aligned} \tag{7.26}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
& \text{Diagram 1} = \sum_{\substack{s+t=k+l-2, \\ t \geq 0}} (t+1) \sum_{\substack{f+g=t-1, \\ f \geq 0}} \left(\text{Diagram 9} - \text{Diagram 10} - \text{Diagram 11} \right).
\end{aligned} \tag{7.27}$$

Using the equations (7.26) and (7.27) and changing f to u , we can now rewrite the relation (7.23) as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
F_{\diamond, k} E_{\diamond, l} F_{\diamond, m} 1_{\mu} = & - \sum_{\substack{s+t=k+l-2, \\ t \geq 0}} (t+1) \sum_{\substack{u+g=t-1, \\ u \geq 0}} \left(\text{Diagram 12} - \text{Diagram 13} - \text{Diagram 14} \right) \\
& - \sum_{\substack{s+t=l+m-2, \\ t \geq 0}} (t+1) \sum_{\substack{u+g=t-1, \\ u \geq 0}} \left(\text{Diagram 15} + \text{Diagram 16} + \text{Diagram 17} \right) - \tag{7.28}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
& -2F_{\diamond, k+l+m} 1_{\mu} + \sum_{\substack{s+t+u=-3, \\ t \geq 0, \\ u \geq 0}} (t+1) \text{Diagram 1} + \sum_{\substack{s+t+u=-3, \\ t \geq 0, \\ u \geq 0}} (t+1) \text{Diagram 2} = \\
& = - \sum_{\substack{s+g+u=k+l-3, \\ u+g+1 \geq 0, \\ u \geq 0}} (u+g+2) \text{Diagram 3} - \text{Diagram 4} - \text{Diagram 5} - \\
& - \sum_{\substack{s+g+u=l+m-3, \\ u+g+1 \geq 0, \\ u \geq 0}} (u+g+2) \text{Diagram 6} + \text{Diagram 7} + \text{Diagram 8} - \quad (7.29)
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
& -2F_{\diamond, k+l+m} 1_{\mu} + \sum_{\substack{s+t+u=l+m-3, \\ t \geq l+m, \\ u \geq 0}} (t-l-m+1) \text{Diagram 9} + \sum_{\substack{s+t+u=k+l-3, \\ t \geq k+l, \\ u \geq 0}} (t-k-l+1) \text{Diagram 10} = \\
& = \sum_{\substack{s+g+u=k+l-3, \\ s \leq k+l-2, \\ u \geq 0}} (s-k-l+1) \text{Diagram 11} - \text{Diagram 12} - \text{Diagram 13} + \\
& + \sum_{\substack{s+g+u=l+m-3, \\ s \leq l+m-2, \\ u \geq 0}} (s-l-m+1) \text{Diagram 14} + \text{Diagram 15} + \text{Diagram 16} - \quad (7.30)
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
& -2F_{\diamond, k+l+m} 1_{\mu} + \sum_{\substack{s+t+u=l+m-3, \\ s \geq l+m, \\ u \geq 0}} (s-l-m+1) \text{Diagram 17} + \sum_{\substack{s+t+u=k+l-3, \\ s \geq k+l, \\ u \geq 0}} (s-k-l+1) \text{Diagram 18} =
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \sum_{\substack{s+g+u=k+l-3, \\ u \geq 0}} (s-k-l+1) \left(\text{Diagram 1} \right) - \left(\text{Diagram 2} \right) - \left(\text{Diagram 3} \right) + \\
&+ \sum_{\substack{s+g+u=l+m-3, \\ u \geq 0}} (s-l-m+1) \left(\text{Diagram 4} \right) + \left(\text{Diagram 5} \right) + \left(\text{Diagram 6} \right) - 2F_{\diamond, k+l+m} 1_{\mu}.
\end{aligned} \tag{7.31}$$

By interchanging k and m in the equation (7.31), we have

$$\begin{aligned}
F_{\diamond, m} E_{\diamond, l} F_{\diamond, k} 1_{\mu} &= \sum_{\substack{s+g+u=m+l-3, \\ u \geq 0}} (s-m-l+1) \left(\text{Diagram 1} \right) - \left(\text{Diagram 2} \right) - \left(\text{Diagram 3} \right) + \\
&+ \sum_{\substack{s+g+u=l+k-3, \\ u \geq 0}} (s-l-k+1) \left(\text{Diagram 4} \right) + \left(\text{Diagram 5} \right) + \left(\text{Diagram 6} \right) - 2F_{\diamond, k+l+m} 1_{\mu}.
\end{aligned} \tag{7.32}$$

We add the left and right hand sides of the equations (7.31) and (7.32) and using the relations (2.7) and (2.8) in [8], we get the following equality:

$$\begin{aligned}
&F_{\diamond, k} E_{\diamond, l} F_{\diamond, m} 1_{\mu} + F_{\diamond, m} E_{\diamond, l} F_{\diamond, k} 1_{\mu} - F_{\diamond, k} F_{\diamond, m} E_{\diamond, l} 1_{\mu} - E_{\diamond, l} F_{\diamond, k} F_{\diamond, m} 1_{\mu} + 4F_{\diamond, k+l+m} 1_{\mu} = \\
&= \sum_{\substack{s+g+u=k+l-3, \\ u \geq 0}} (s-k-l+1) \left(\text{Diagram 1} \right) + \sum_{\substack{s+g+u=m+l-3, \\ u \geq 0}} (s-m-l+1) \left(\text{Diagram 2} \right) + \\
&+ \sum_{\substack{s+g+u=l+m-3, \\ u \geq 0}} (s-l-m+1) \left(\text{Diagram 3} \right) + \sum_{\substack{s+g+u=l+k-3, \\ u \geq 0}} (s-l-k+1) \left(\text{Diagram 4} \right).
\end{aligned} \tag{7.33}$$

We will use the $*$ labels to emphasize the degrees of bubbles:

$$\begin{aligned}
\begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \bullet \\ p-\mu_\diamond-2 \end{array}^\mu &= \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ * \\ p \end{array}^\mu, & \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \bullet \\ q+\mu_\diamond-1 \end{array}^\mu &= \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ * \\ q \end{array}^\mu, \\
\begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \bullet \\ p-\mu_\diamond+1 \end{array}^{\mu-\alpha_\diamond} &= \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ * \\ p \end{array}^{\mu-\alpha_\diamond}, & \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ \bullet \\ q+\mu_\diamond-4 \end{array}^{\mu-\alpha_\diamond} &= \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ * \\ q \end{array}^{\mu-\alpha_\diamond}.
\end{aligned}$$

With this notation, the equation (7.33) becomes

$$\begin{aligned}
& -[\mathbb{F}_{\diamond,k}, [\mathbb{F}_{\diamond,m} \mathbb{E}_{\diamond,l}]] 1_\mu + 4\mathbb{F}_{\diamond,k+l+m} 1_\mu = \\
= & \sum_{\substack{p+q+u=k+l, \\ 0 \leq u \leq k+l}} (p-k-l+2-\mu_\diamond) \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ * \\ p \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ * \\ q \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ * \\ u+m \end{array}^\mu + \sum_{\substack{p+q+u=m+l, \\ 0 \leq u \leq l+m}} (p-m-l+2-\mu_\diamond) \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ * \\ p \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ * \\ q \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ * \\ u+k \end{array}^\mu + \\
& + \sum_{\substack{p+q+u=l+m, \\ 0 \leq u \leq l+m}} (q-l-m+\mu_\diamond) \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ * \\ p \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ * \\ q \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ * \\ u+k \end{array}^\mu + \sum_{\substack{p+q+u=l+k, \\ 0 \leq u \leq l+k}} (q-l-k+\mu_\diamond) \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ * \\ p \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ * \\ q \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ * \\ u+m \end{array}^\mu. \quad (7.34)
\end{aligned}$$

Recall that the following Grassmannian relation (6.17) holds for all $z \geq 1$:

$$\sum_{p+q=z} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ * \\ p \end{array}^\mu \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ * \\ q \end{array}^\mu = 0. \quad (7.35)$$

We can split the sums on the right hand side of the equation (7.34) and use the Grassmannian relation (7.35) to write the equality (7.34) as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
& -[\mathbb{F}_{\diamond,k}, [\mathbb{F}_{\diamond,m} \mathbb{E}_{\diamond,l}]] 1_\mu + 4\mathbb{F}_{\diamond,k+l+m} 1_\mu = \\
= & \sum_{\substack{p+q+u=k+l, \\ 0 \leq u \leq l+k-1}} p \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ * \\ p \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ * \\ q \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ * \\ u+m \end{array}^\mu + \sum_{\substack{p+q+u=m+l, \\ 0 \leq u \leq l+m-1}} p \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ * \\ p \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ * \\ q \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ * \\ u+k \end{array}^\mu + \\
& + \sum_{\substack{p+q+u=l+m, \\ 0 \leq u \leq l+m-1}} q \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ * \\ p \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ * \\ q \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ * \\ u+k \end{array}^\mu + \sum_{\substack{p+q+u=l+k, \\ 0 \leq u \leq l+k-1}} q \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ * \\ p \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ * \\ q \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ * \\ u+m \end{array}^\mu + 2(4-2(k+l)-2(l+m)) \begin{array}{c} \circlearrowleft \\ * \\ k+l+m \end{array}^\mu. \quad (7.36)
\end{aligned}$$

Hence,

$$\begin{aligned}
& -[\mathbf{F}_{\diamond,k}, [\mathbf{F}_{\diamond,m} \mathbf{E}_{\diamond,l}]]1_{\mu} - 4\mathbf{F}_{\diamond,k+l+m}1_{\mu} = \\
& = - \sum_{\substack{p+q+u=k+l, \\ 0 \leq u \leq l+k-1}} q \text{ (diagram with circles } p, q, u+m \text{)} - \sum_{\substack{p+q+u=m+l, \\ 0 \leq u \leq l+m-1}} q \text{ (diagram with circles } p, q, u+k \text{)} - \\
& + \sum_{\substack{p+q+u=l+m, \\ 0 \leq u \leq l+m-1}} q \text{ (diagram with circles } p, q, u+k \text{)} + \sum_{\substack{p+q+u=l+k, \\ 0 \leq u \leq l+k-1}} q \text{ (diagram with circles } p, q, u+m \text{)} - 4(k+2l+m) \mathbf{F}_{\diamond,k+l+m}1_{\mu}. \quad (7.37)
\end{aligned}$$

By using the notation (7.6), we write (7.37) as

$$\begin{aligned}
& [\mathbf{F}_{\diamond,k}, [\mathbf{F}_{\diamond,m} \mathbf{E}_{\diamond,l}]]1_{\mu} + 4\mathbf{F}_{\diamond,k+l+m}1_{\mu} = \\
& = \sum_{u=0}^{k+l-1} (P_{k+l-u}(\mu - \alpha_{\diamond})\mathbf{F}_{\diamond,u+m}1_{\mu} - \mathbf{F}_{\diamond,u+m}1_{\mu}P_{k+l-u}(\mu)) + \\
& + \sum_{u=0}^{l+m-1} (P_{l+m-u}(\mu - \alpha_{\diamond})\mathbf{F}_{\diamond,u+k}1_{\mu} - \mathbf{F}_{\diamond,u+k}1_{\mu}P_{l+m-u}(\mu)) + 4(k+2l+m)\mathbf{F}_{\diamond,k+l+m}1_{\mu} = \\
& = 2 \sum_{u=0}^{k+l-1} [H_{\diamond,k+l-u}, \mathbf{F}_{\diamond,u+m}]1_{\mu} + 2 \sum_{u=0}^{l+m-1} [H_{\diamond,l+m-u}, \mathbf{F}_{\diamond,u+k}]1_{\mu} + 4(k+2l+m)\mathbf{F}_{\diamond,k+l+m}1_{\mu} = \\
& = 2 \sum_{u=0}^{k+l-1} (-2 - (-1)^{k+l-u})\mathbf{F}_{\diamond,k+l+m}1_{\mu} + 2 \sum_{u=0}^{l+m-1} (-2 - (-1)^{l+m-u})\mathbf{F}_{\diamond,k+l+m}1_{\mu} + 4(k+2l+m)\mathbf{F}_{\diamond,k+l+m}1_{\mu} = \\
& = -2 \sum_{u=0}^{k+l-1} (-1)^{k+l-u}\mathbf{F}_{\diamond,k+l+m}1_{\mu} - 2 \sum_{u=0}^{l+m-1} (-1)^{l+m-u}\mathbf{F}_{\diamond,k+l+m}1_{\mu}.
\end{aligned}$$

Thus, we finally have

$$\begin{aligned}
& [\mathbf{F}_{\diamond,k}, [\mathbf{F}_{\diamond,m} \mathbf{E}_{\diamond,l}]]1_{\mu} = \left(-4 - 2 \sum_{u=0}^{k+l-1} (-1)^{k+l-u} - 2 \sum_{u=0}^{l+m-1} (-1)^{l+m-u} \right) \mathbf{F}_{\diamond,k+l+m}1_{\mu} = \\
& = \left(-4 + 2 \sum_{u=0}^{k+l-1} (-1)^u + 2 \sum_{u=0}^{l+m-1} (-1)^u \right) \mathbf{F}_{\diamond,k+l+m}1_{\mu} = (-2 - (-1)^{k+l} - (-1)^{l+m}) \mathbf{F}_{\diamond,k+l+m}1_{\mu}.
\end{aligned}$$

The relation (7.18) can be proved in a similar way. \square

We expect the \mathbb{k} -algebra homomorphism (7.1.4) to be an isomorphism. We have the following result about the trace of the 2-category $\dot{\mathcal{U}}^j$.

Theorem 7.2.1. *The Chern character map $h_q: K_0(\dot{\mathcal{U}}^j) \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{Q}(q) \cong \dot{\mathcal{U}}^j \rightarrow \text{Tr } \dot{\mathcal{U}}^j$ is an isomorphism of $\mathbb{Q}(q)$ -modules.*

Proof. The proof is similar to the proof of Theorem 8.1 in [5]. The 2-category $\dot{\mathcal{U}}^j$ is Krull-Schmidt (see section 4.5 in [2]). Then by Proposition 2.4 in [5], the map h_q is injective.

The trace $\text{Tr } \dot{\mathcal{U}}^j$ is generated by $E_{i,0}1_\mu$ and $F_{i,0}1_\mu$, $\mu \in X^j$ over $\mathbb{Q}(q)$, and they are obviously images of the generators $E_{i,0}1_\mu$ and $F_{i,0}1_\mu$ of $\dot{\mathcal{U}}^j$. Thus, h_q is surjective. \square

Bibliography

- [1] H. Bao and W. Wang, *A new approach to Kazhdan-Lusztig theory of type B via quantum symmetric pairs*. arXiv:1310.0103.
- [2] H. Bao, P. Shan, W. Wang and B. Webster, *Categorification of quantum symmetric pairs I*. arXiv:1605.03780.
- [3] D. Bar-Natan, *Khovanov's homology for tangles and cobordisms*. Geom. Topol. 9:1443–1499, 2005. arXiv:0410495.
- [4] A. Beilinson, G. Lusztig and R. McPherson, *A geometric setting for the quantum deformation of GL_n* . Duke Math. J. , 61:655–677, 1990.
- [5] A. Beliakova, K. Habiro, A. Lauda and B. Webster, *Current algebras and categorified quantum groups*. J. London Math. Soc., 95:248–276, 2017. arXiv:1412.1417.
- [6] A. Beliakova, K. Habiro, A. Lauda and B. Webster, *Cyclicity for categorified quantum groups*. Journal of Algebra, 452:118–132, 2016. arXiv:1506.04671.
- [7] A. Beliakova, K. Habiro, A. Lauda and M. Zivkovic, *Trace decategorification of categorified quantum \mathfrak{sl}_2* . Math. Annalen, 367:397–440, 2017. arXiv:1404.1806.
- [8] A. Beliakova, Z. Guliyev, K. Habiro and A. Lauda, *Trace as an alternative decategorification functor*. Acta Math. Viet. 39:425–480, 2014. arXiv:1409.1198 .
- [9] A. Beliakova, K. K. Putyra, S. M. Wehrli, *Quantum Link Homology via Trace Functor I*. arXiv:1605.03523 .
- [10] J. Bernstein, I. Frenkel and M. Khovanov, *A categorification of the Temperley-Lieb algebra and Schur quotients of $U(\mathfrak{sl}_2)$ via projective and Zuckerman functors*. Selecta Mathematica, 5:199–241, 1999. arXiv:0002087 .
- [11] J. Brundan, *Centers of degenerate cyclotomic Hecke algebras and parabolic category \mathcal{O}* . Represent. Theory, 12:236–259, 2008. arXiv:0607717.

- [12] J. Brundan, *On the definition of Kac-Moody 2-category*. J. Math. Ann., 364: 353–372, 2016. arXiv:1501.00350.
- [13] J. Brundan, *Symmetric functions, parabolic category \mathcal{O} , and the Springer fiber*. Duke Math. J., 143(1):41–79, 2008. arXiv:math/0608235.
- [14] J. Brundan and N. Davidson, *Categorical actions and crystals*. to appear in Contemporary Mathematics, Special Volume "Perspectives on Categorification". arXiv:1603.08938.
- [15] J. Brundan and A. Kleshchev, *Blocks of cyclotomic Hecke algebras and Khovanov-Lauda algebras*. Invent. Math., 178(3):451–484, 2009. arXiv:0808.2032.
- [16] J. Brundan and A. Kleshchev, *Graded decomposition numbers for cyclotomic Hecke algebras*. Advances in Math., 222:1883–1942, 2009. arXiv:0901.4450.
- [17] J. Brundan and V. Ostrik, *Cohomology of Spaltenstein varieties*. Transform. Groups, 16(3):619–648, 2011. arXiv:1012.3426.
- [18] S. Cautis, *Clasp technology to knot homology via the affine Grassmannian*. Math. Annalen, 363(3):1053–1115, 2015. arXiv:1207.2074.
- [19] S. Cautis, J. Kamnitzer, S. Morrison, *Webs and quantum skew Howe duality*. Math. Annalen, 360:351–390, 2014. arXiv:1210.6437.
- [20] S. Cautis, J. Kamnitzer, A. Licata, *Categorical geometric skew Howe duality*. Invent. math. , 180:111–159, 2010. arXiv:0902.1795.
- [21] S. Cautis and A. Lauda, *Implicit structure in 2-representations of quantum groups*. Selecta Mathematica, 21:201–244, 2015. arXiv:1111.1431.
- [22] V. Chari, G. Fourier and T. Khandai, *A categorical approach to Weyl modules*. Transform. Groups, 15(3):517–549, 2010. arXiv:0906.2014.
- [23] V. Chari and B. Ion, *BGG reciprocity for current algebras*. Compositio Mathematica, 151:1265 –1287, 2015. arXiv:01307.1440.
- [24] V. Chari and S. Loktev, *Weyl, Demazure and fusion modules for the current algebra of \mathfrak{sl}_{r+1}* . Adv. Math., 207:928–960, 2006. arXiv:0502165.
- [25] V. Chari and A. Pressley, *Weyl Modules for Classical and Quantum Affine algebras*. Represent. Theory 5:191–223, 2005. arXiv:0004174.

- [26] J. Chuang and R. Rouquier, *Derived equivalences for symmetric groups and \mathfrak{sl}_2 -categorification*. Annals of Math., 167:245–298, 2008. arXiv:0407205.
- [27] L. Crane and I. Frenkel, *Four dimensional topological quantum field theory, Hopf categories, and the canonical bases*. J. Math. Phys., 35:5136–5154, 1994. arXiv:9405183.
- [28] I. Frenkel, M. Khovanov and C. Stroppel, *A categorification of finite-dimensional irreducible representations of quantum \mathfrak{sl}_2 and their tensor products*. Selecta Mathematica 12(3-4):379–431, 2007. arXiv:0511467.
- [29] W. Fulton, *Young tableaux: with applications to representation theory and geometry*. Cambridge University Press, 1997. London Mathematical Society Student Texts.
- [30] N. Ganter and M. Kapranov, *Representation and character theory in 2-categories*. Adv. Math., 217(5):2268–2300, 2008. arXiv:math/0602510.
- [31] Z. Guliyev, *Trace and categorical \mathfrak{sl}_n representations*. in preparation.
- [32] S. Kang and M. Kashiwara, *Categorification of highest weight modules via Khovanov-Lauda-Rouquier algebras*. Invent. Math. 190:699–742, 2012. arXiv:1102.4677.
- [33] M. Khovanov and A. Lauda, *A diagrammatic approach to categorification of quantum groups I*. Represent. Theory, 13:309–347, 2009. arXiv:0803.4121.
- [34] M. Khovanov and A. Lauda, *A diagrammatic approach to categorification of quantum groups II*. Trans. Amer. Math. Soc. 363: 2685–2700, 2011. arXiv:0804.2080.
- [35] M. Khovanov and A. Lauda, *A diagrammatic approach to categorification of quantum groups III*. Quantum Topology, 1:1–92, 2010. arXiv:0807.3250.
- [36] M. Khovanov, A. Lauda, M. Mackaay and M. Stosic, *Extended graphical calculus for categorified quantum \mathfrak{sl}_2* . Memoirs of the AMS, 219, 2012. arXiv:1006.2866.
- [37] R. Kodera and K. Naoi, *Loewy series of Weyl modules and the Poincare polynomials of quiver varieties*. Publications of RIMS 48:477–500, 2012. arXiv:1103.4207.
- [38] A. Lauda, *A categorification of quantum \mathfrak{sl}_2* . Adv. Math., 225:3327–3424, 2008. arXiv:0803.3652.
- [39] A. Lauda, *An introduction to diagrammatic algebra and categorified quantum \mathfrak{sl}_2* . Bulletin Inst. Math. Academia Sinica, 7:165–270, 2012. arXiv:1106.2128.

- [40] A. Lauda, H. Queffelec and D. Rose, *Khovanov homology is a skew Howe 2-representation of categorified quantum \mathfrak{sl}_m* . Algebraic & Geometric Topology 15(5): 2515–2606, 2015. arXiv:1212.6076.
- [41] G. Letzter, *Quantum symmetric pairs and their zonal spherical functions*. Transformation Groups 8: 261–292, 2003. arXiv:0204103.
- [42] G. Lusztig, *Introduction to quantum groups, volume 110 of Progress in Mathematics*. Birkhäuser Boston Inc., Boston, 1993.
- [43] I. G. Macdonald, *Symmetric functions and Hall polynomials*. The Clarendon Press Oxford University Press, New York, 1979. Oxford Mathematical Monographs.
- [44] M. Mackaay, *\mathfrak{sl}_3 -foams and the Khovanov-Lauda categorification of quantum \mathfrak{sl}_k* . arXiv:0905.2059.
- [45] M. Mackaay, *The \mathfrak{sl}_N -web algebras and dual canonical bases*. Journal of Algebra, 9:54–100, 2014. arXiv:1308.0566.
- [46] M. Mackaay, M. Stošić and P. Vaz, *A diagrammatic categorification of the q -Schur algebra*. Quantum Topology, 4:1–75, 2013. arXiv:1008.1348.
- [47] A. Malkin, *Tensor product varieties and crystals: The ADE case*. Duke Math. J., 116:477–524, 2003. arXiv:0103025.
- [48] V. Mazorchuk and C. Stroppel, *A combinatorial approach to functorial quantum \mathfrak{sl}_k knot invariants*. American Journal of Mathematics, 131(6):1679–1713, 2009. arXiv:0709.1971.
- [49] M. Müger, *From subfactors to categories and topology I. Frobenius algebras in and Morita equivalence of tensor categories*. J. Pure Appl. Algebra, 180:81–157, 2003. arXiv:0111204.
- [50] H. Queffelec, D. Rose, *Sutured annular Khovanov-Rozansky homology*. to appear in Transactions of the AMS. arXiv:1506.08188.
- [51] H. Queffelec, D. Rose, *The \mathfrak{sl}_n foam 2-category: a combinatorial formulation of Khovanov-Rozansky homology via categorical skew Howe duality*. Adv. in Math., 302: 1251–1339, 2016. arXiv:1405.5920.
- [52] K. Raghavan, B. Ravinder and S. Viswanath, *On Chari-Loktev bases for local Weyl modules in type A*. arXiv:1606.01191.

- [53] R. Rouquier, *2-Kac-Moody algebras*. arXiv:0812.5023.
- [54] R. Rouquier, *Quiver Hecke algebras and 2-Lie algebras*. Algebra Colloq., 19:359–410, 2012. arXiv:1112.3619.
- [55] Y. B. Sanderson, *On the connection between Macdonald polynomials and Demazure characters*. Journal of Algebraic Combinatorics, 11:269–275, 2000. Online version.
- [56] P. Shan, M. Varagnolo and E. Vasserot, *On the center of Quiver-Hecke algebras*. arXiv:1411.4392.
- [57] C. Stroppel, *Categorification of the Temperley-Lieb category, tangles, and cobordisms via projective functors*. Duke Math. J. 126(3): 547–596, 2005.
- [58] M. Varagnolo and E. Vasserot, *Canonical bases and Khovanov-Lauda algebras*. Journal für die reine und angewandte Mathematik, 659:67–100, 2011. arXiv:0901.3992.
- [59] B. Webster, *Canonical bases and higher representation theory*. Compositio Mathematica, 151(1):121–166, 2015. arXiv:1209.0051.
- [60] B. Webster, *Centers of KLR algebras and cohomology rings of quiver varieties*. arXiv:1504.04401.
- [61] B. Webster, *Knot invariants and higher representation theory*. to appear in the Memoirs of the AMS. arXiv:1309.3796.